



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE STUDENTS' SERIES

THE FIRST BOOK

IN LATIN

FOR THE STUDENTS OF THE

THIS BOOK IS PRESENTED TO

Mr. Monroe E. Deutsch

WITH THE COMPLIMENTS OF THE PUBLISHERS

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

May 6, 1904.

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN

BY

HIRAM TUELL, A.M.,

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL OF THE MILTON (MASS.) HIGH SCHOOL

AND

HAROLD NORTH FOWLER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE WESTERN RESERVE UNIVERSITY; FORMERLY PROFESSOR
OF LATIN IN THE PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY

A REVISED EDITION.

CALIFORNIA

οὐ πολλὰ ἀλλὰ πολὺ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.A.

1904

*PA 2087
T 91
1904*

COPYRIGHT, 1898,
BY HIRAM TUELL AND HAROLD NORTH FOWLER.

COPYRIGHT, 1908,
BY HIRAM TUELL AND HAROLD NORTH FOWLER.

TO THE
AIRS OF THE

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE vocabulary of this book contains about seven hundred words, exclusive of proper names.

While words not found in Cæsar¹ have been used as material for paradigms, illustrations, and sentences on familiar subjects, by far the greater part of the vocabulary has been selected from the first four books of the *Gallic War*. Indeed, nearly every word which Cæsar uses six or more times in these four books will be found here; and they form so large a proportion of the text of Cæsar that a pupil who has mastered the vocabulary of this book will find himself familiar with eighty-five per cent of the words of the *Gallic War*.

To ensure the acquisition of the vocabulary, every word when first introduced is used in at least three consecutive chapters; and the small number of words

¹ While the vocabulary was selected with special reference to Cæsar, subsequent examination shows that it is equally valuable for those who are to read Nepos, as it contains about eighty per cent of the words in the life of Themistocles, which may be taken as a fair representative of that author.

has compelled their more frequent repetition in later chapters.

The illustrative sentences—which in all cases precede the rules of syntax—contain, with few exceptions, only words already found in the exercises.

Each principle of syntax appears in at least three successive chapters when first introduced, and is afterwards frequently repeated.

The development of the verb is slow, and carefully graded with reference to the difficulty of acquirement.

The exercises on forms are designed to be easy drill-exercises, and contain no new words. They are numerous, and are capable of indefinite expansion at the will of the teacher.

The carefully graded reading lessons, beginning with Chapter XXX., contain the story of the first book of the *Gallic War*, and so prepare the pupil to begin the reading of Cæsar at the second book, with a proper understanding of the previous narrative; or at the first, with such a knowledge of its contents as to remove many of its difficulties. Few words are used which have not already occurred in the exercises; and whenever new words are introduced, their translation is given in parenthesis.

The illustrations and exercises of Chapter LXI. (on indirect discourse) can be omitted without causing inconvenience in the use of the rest of the book.

The derivation and composition of words are treated more fully than is usual in books for beginners, in the hope that a simple presentation of important parts of these subjects may lighten the pupil's subsequent labors.

The selections for sight reading at the end of the book contain not only fables, but also passages adapted from Eutropius, giving a brief biography of Julius Cæsar.

It is expected that the book will prove easier than the ordinary first book, on account of its small vocabulary and careful gradation, and will contribute far more to the rapidity and pleasure of later progress in consequence of the principle which has guided the selection of the words and the more thorough mastery of their meanings.

We desire to acknowledge our indebtedness to Henry Snyder, A.M., Superintendent of the Schools of Jersey City, who made valuable contributions in the earlier stages of the work, and to Professor E. M. Pease, of Leland Stanford Junior University, editor-in-chief of this series, whose criticisms and suggestions at every stage have been very helpful.

HIRAM TUELL.

HAROLD N. FOWLER.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

IN revising this book we have retained its essential features, because we believe that the principles by which we were governed in writing it ten years ago were, and are, correct. That the book has met a conscious want, its use in more than a thousand schools and the verdict of a multitude of teachers who have used it afford convincing proof. We believe that the changes and additions now made will render the work still more serviceable and popular.

Before the revision was begun, letters were sent to leading teachers using the book, inviting criticism and suggestions regarding changes that experience had shown to be desirable. From the replies received, the authors have derived important aid, and many changes suggested are incorporated in the revised book, to a few of which we wish to call attention.

1. A few additional lessons for early reading have been added at the end of the book, and the other selections have been so modified as to give the learner some practice in the use of the general vocabulary as a preparation for the use of a lexicon. The story of Cæsar's second invasion of Britain has been substituted for the selection from Eutropius.

2. A table showing the tense-signs and personal endings of verbs, a table of references to the standard Latin grammars, and a grouping of the rules of syntax have been introduced at the end of the book, and the paradigms of deponent verbs have been added to those previously printed.

3. The mark of length has been removed from several vowels formerly marked as long. In all these cases the syllables are scanned long in poetry, but the vowels appear to have been regarded as short. More detailed explanations are to be found in W. M. Lindsay's book entitled *The Latin Language*, especially pages 53 (*eius*, *huius*, etc.), 138 (*hic*, *hoc*), and 433, and in various special treatises on the pronunciation of Latin.

4. The illustrations added are such as really illustrate the reading matter, and they are inserted, so far as possible, in connection with the text to which they relate.

5. The English introduction will, we are confident, be of great service.

We desire to express our thanks to all those who have aided us by friendly suggestions, especially to Arthur F. M. Custance of the Duluth High School, Bernard M. Allen of Phillips Academy, Andover; Arthur Williams and E. W. Lamson of the New York Preparatory School, and to Gordon A. Southworth, author of a popular series of English text-books, for helpful criticism of the English introduction.

H. T.

H. N. F.

SEPTEMBER, 1908.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
English Introduction	xiii-xxv
I. Pronunciation	1
II. First Declension. — <i>Subject and Direct Object</i>	8
III. First Declension (<i>continued</i>). — <i>Genitive with Nouns</i> .	11
IV. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . — <i>Agreement of Verbs</i> . .	12
V. <i>Predicate Noun and Appositive</i>	14
VI. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-us</i> . — <i>Indirect Object</i> .	16
VII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-um</i> . — Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i> . — <i>Agreement of Adjectives</i>	18
VIII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> . — Imperfect Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	21
IX. Adjectives in <i>-er</i> . — Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . — <i>Dative of Possessor</i>	23
X. Third Declension: Mute Stems	26
XI. Third Declension: Mute Stems (<i>continued</i>). — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Active	28
XII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Active	31
XIII. Third Declension (<i>continued</i>). — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Active. — <i>Ablative of Instrument</i> .	34
XIV. Third Declension: Stems in <i>-i</i> . — First Conjugation: Perfect Indicative Active. — Perfect Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . — <i>Ablative of Manner</i>	36
XV. Third Declension: Stems in <i>-i</i> (<i>continued</i>). — First Conjugation: Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . — <i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i> .	40
XVI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems. — <i>Ablative of Time</i> .	44
XVII. Third Declension. — Rules for Gender	47

CHAPTER	PAGE
XVIII. Adjectives of Three Terminations. — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Agent</i>	50
XIX. Adjectives of Two Terminations. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Cause</i>	53
XX. Adjectives of One Termination. — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Specification</i>	56
XXI. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — <i>Descriptive Ablative</i>	60
XXII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of Comparatives. — <i>Ablative with Comparatives</i>	62
XXIII. Comparison of Adjectives (<i>continued</i>). — <i>Partitive Genitive</i>	65
XXIV. Irregular Comparison (<i>continued</i>). — <i>Ablative of Degree of Difference</i>	68
XXV. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	71
XXVI. Fourth Declension. — Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active	73
XXVII. Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — <i>Dative with Adjectives</i>	75
XXVIII. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active	77
XXIX. Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — Fifth Declension	79
XXX. Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive. — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — Reading Lesson	82
XXXI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive	85
XXXII. Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Cardinal Numerals. — <i>Accusative of Extent</i> . — Reading Lesson	87
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — Ordinal Numerals	92

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	94
XXXV. Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Passive. — Possessive Pronouns	99
XXXVI. Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — Reading Lesson	101
XXXVII. Demonstrative Pronouns	104
XXXVIII. Demonstrative Pronouns (<i>continued</i>). — Reading Lesson	106
XXXIX. Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Relative Pronouns	109
XL. Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Interrogative Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	112
XLI. Fourth Conjugation: Passive Voice. — Indefinite Pronouns	115
XLII. Infinitives of <i>Sum</i> : Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations. — <i>Indirect Discourse</i> (<i>Oratio Obliqua</i>): <i>Subject of the Infinitive</i> . — Reading Lesson	118
XLIII. Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations. — <i>Expressions of Place</i>	122
XLIV. Verbs in <i>-io</i> of the Third Conjugation. — Reading Lesson	125
XLV. Participles	128
XLVI. Deponent Verbs. — Reading Lesson	130
XLVII. <i>Possum</i> . — <i>Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse</i>	133
XLVIII. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . — <i>Dative with Compounds</i> . — Reading Lesson	136
XLIX. <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs</i>	138
L. <i>Ferō</i> and Compounds of <i>Ferō</i> . — Reading Lesson	140
LI. Irregular Verbs <i>Volō</i> , <i>Nōlō</i> , and <i>Mālō</i>	143
LII. Irregular Verbs <i>Eō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . — <i>Two Datives</i> . — Reading Lesson	145

CHAPTER	PAGE
LIII. Derivation and Composition of Words	148
LIV. Subjunctive Mood. — <i>Sequence of Tenses</i> . — <i>Indirect Questions</i>	152
LV. First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active. — <i>Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses)</i> . — Reading Lesson	155
LVI. First Conjugation: Subjunctive Passive. — <i>Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)</i>	158
LVII. Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood. — <i>Purpose and Result Clauses (continued)</i> . — Reading Lesson	160
LVIII. Imperative Constructions. — <i>Wishes</i>	163
LIX. Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — <i>Conditional Sentences</i> . — Reading Lesson	166
LX. Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — <i>Clauses with Cum</i>	172
LXI. Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. — <i>Indirect Discourse</i> . — Reading Lesson	176
LXII. Participles (<i>Review</i>). — <i>Ablative Absolute</i>	181
LXIII. Gerund and Gerundive. — Reading Lesson	185
LXIV. Supine. — <i>Expressions of Purpose</i>	190
LXV. Periphrastic Conjugations. — <i>Dative of Agent</i> . — Reading Lesson	193
SELECTIONS FOR READING	199
DECLENSION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	209
PARADIGMS OF VERBS	223
RULES OF SYNTAX	251
REFERENCES TO GRAMMARS	261
VOCABULARIES	265
INDEX	298

A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN. .



ENGLISH INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. When words are so arranged as to express a definite thought, they form what is called a *sentence*.

A sentence may *assert* something, or *ask* about something, or *order* something to be done.

Hence we say that —

1. There are three kinds of sentences, — assertive, interrogative, and imperative sentences.

Some sentences are single assertions, questions, or commands; others combine two or more; and still others contain, besides, one or more dependent assertions.

Hence we say that, in form, —

2. Sentences are simple, compound, or complex.

The sun sets.

The sun sets, and the stars appear.

When the sun sets, the stars appear.

2. Every simple sentence consists of two parts, — the subject and the predicate.

1. In the assertive sentence the word that represents that about which the assertion is made is called the *subject*.

2. What is asserted is called the *predicate*.

Birds fly.

Birds is the subject, because it represents *that about which something is asserted*. *Fly* is the predicate, because it is *what is said about the subject*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

3. The words which compose sentences are divided into eight classes, according to their uses. These classes are called the *parts of speech*.

A simple sentence consists of at least two words, — the subject and the asserting word; as, *John runs*.

NOUNS.

4. The subject is usually the name of something. A word used as a name is called a *noun*. The asserting word is called a *verb*.

KINDS OF NOUNS.

5. Some nouns are names applied to any one of a whole class of objects, — as, *girl, town*, — and are called *common nouns*.

Other nouns are applied to single individuals only, — as, *Julia, Brookline*, — and are called *proper nouns*.

NUMBER.

6. The form of a noun which denotes one object only is the *singular number*; as, *boy, box, lady*.

The form of a noun which denotes more than one object is the *plural number*; as, *boys, boxes, ladies*.

GENDER.

7. Nouns that denote males only are said to be in the *masculine gender*; as, *John, son*.

Nouns which denote females only are said to be in the *feminine gender*; as, *Julia, daughter*.

Nouns which denote either males or females are said to be in the *common gender*; as, *child, writer*.

Nouns which denote things without sex are said to be in the *neuter gender*; as, *book, pencil*.

CASE.

8. In many languages nouns have different forms to show their relations in a sentence, but in English the same form is used in all relations, except to denote ownership or possession; then a special form, called the *possessive case*, is used.

1. The possessive case is formed by adding to the common form an apostrophe and *s* (*'s*) or an apostrophe (*'*) alone.

2. When a plural noun ends in *s*, an apostrophe alone is added to form the possessive; as, *birds' feathers, ladies' room*.

3. The possessive of all other nouns is formed by adding an apostrophe and *s*; as, *a boy's hat, a lady's glove, the children's dinner*.

4. Nouns are used in sentences in three prominent relations, commonly called *cases*, — the *nominative*, the *possessive*, and the *objective*.

The nominative and the objective have the same form. The case of a noun in a sentence is determined by its use.

5. In the simplest form of a sentence, as *John runs*, we have said that *John* is used as the subject. A noun thus used as the subject of a sentence is said to be in the *nominative case*.

6. The predicate seldom consists of one word. Many assertive words require, to complete the assertion, some noun to show the person or thing towards which the action is directed; as, —

Farmers sell hay.

Hay is the object which receives the action of selling.

A noun thus used is called the *object*, and is said to be in the *objective case*.

ADJECTIVES.

9. Tall trees stand on the roadside.
Those trees were planted by my grandfather.

Notice that *tall* describes or expresses a quality of *trees*, and that *those* limits *trees*. Not trees, but those particular trees, were planted by my grandfather.

Words which describe things or limit nouns are called *adjectives*.

Adjectives which describe or qualify are called *descriptive adjectives*, those which only limit are called *limiting adjectives*.

Among limiting adjectives are the articles *the*, *an*, or *a*.
The is called the *definite article*.

An or *a* is called the *indefinite article*.

COMPARISON.

10. Many descriptive adjectives change their forms, by adding *er* and *est*, to show that one object excels another in the quality which it expresses; as, *tall*, *taller*, *tallest*.

This change to express different degrees of quality is called *comparison*.

The simple form of the adjective is called the *positive*. The form which expresses the higher degree of quality is the *comparative*. The form which expresses the highest degree is the *superlative*.

1. Adjectives of one syllable, and a few others, are compared by the addition of *er* and *est*.

2. These additions to longer adjectives would give an awkward sound, and so, when they are compared, the comparative and superlative are formed by the use of *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*.

difficult	more	} difficult	most	} difficult
	less		least	

3. Some adjectives are compared irregularly : —

good	better	best
bad	worse	worst

A list of adjectives irregularly compared will be found in English grammars.

PRONOUNS.

11. John bought a book in the city.

He bought it for his sister, who goes to school.

Notice in the second sentence that *he* is used instead of *John*, *it* instead of *book*, and *his* instead of *John's*.

Such words, used instead of nouns, are called *pronouns*. They have the same uses in the sentence as nouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

12. Pronouns which represent the *speaker* are said to be of the *first* person. They are *I* and its variations : *my*, *me*, *we*, *our*, *us*.

Pronouns which represent the *person spoken to* are said to be of the *second person*. They are *thou* and its variations: *thy, thee, ye, you, your*.

Pronouns which represent the person or thing *spoken of* are said to be of the *third person*. They are *he, she, it*, and their variations.

These pronouns which distinguish the person are called *personal pronouns*.

Personal pronouns have different forms for the different cases and numbers.

13. To give all the case and number forms of a pronoun is to decline it. Thus:—

		NOMINATIVE.	POSSESSIVE.	OBJECTIVE.
FIRST PERSON.	<i>Singular.</i>	I	my (mine)	me
	<i>Plural.</i>	we	our (ours)	us
SECOND PERSON.	<i>Singular.</i>	thou	thy (thine)	thee
	<i>Plural.</i>	you, ye	your (yours)	you
THIRD PERSON.	<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	he	his	him
	<i>Sing. Fem.</i>	she	her (hers)	her
	<i>Sing. Neut.</i>	it	its	it
	<i>Plural.</i>	they	their (theirs)	them

Thou and its forms are seldom used except in poetry, but *you* and its forms are used in the singular instead.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

14. Another kind of pronoun is used to ask a question. Such pronouns are called *interrogative pronouns*; as, *Who* called me?

The interrogative pronouns are *who, which, and what*. *Who* has an objective form *whom* and a possessive form *whose*.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

15. The use of the *relative pronouns* is illustrated in the following sentence :—

The beautiful costume *which* she wore had been borrowed for the occasion.

The pronoun *which* stands for or relates to the word *costume*, and the group of words which it introduces, has a subject and a predicate, and as a whole tells something about *costume* or modifies *costume*. A group of words having a subject and predicate, and used like an adjective to modify some noun in a sentence, is called an *adjective clause*.

16. The pronouns which introduce adjective clauses are called *relative* or *conjunctive pronouns*. They are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*. They may be used in any relation or case.

Who has the objective form *whom*, and a possessive form *whose*. *Whose* is also used as the possessive of *which*. *Who* applies to persons, *which* to things, and *that* to either persons or things.

The word *as* is sometimes used as a relative pronoun following *such*, *as many*, or *some*.

17. The word for which a pronoun stands is called its *antecedent*.

18. The pronoun *what* does not have an antecedent expressed, but is equivalent to *that which*, and so is sometimes called a *compound relative*. Clauses introduced by *what* equivalent to *that which* are properly classed as substantive or noun clauses, owing to the substantive nature of *that* ; as, *I believe what you say*.

19. Other pronouns are demonstrative (*this, that, these, those*), indefinite (*one, any, any one, anybody, anything, some, some one, somebody, whoever, whichever, whatever*), and adjective (*each, every, either, neither, such*, and several other words which are sometimes used as pronouns and sometimes as adjectives).

VERBS.

20. We have learned that the asserting word in a sentence is called a verb.

We have also learned that some verbs form a complete predicate, while others require some noun called the object to show who or what receives the action.

1. A verb of the former class is called a *complete verb*.
2. A verb of the latter class is called an *incomplete verb*.
3. There is another kind of incomplete verbs illustrated in the following sentences:—

Mr. Johnson is a farmer. He is industrious.

Here in one sentence a noun naming the same person that the subject names is added to complete the predicate, and in the other an adjective relating to the subject is added.

A noun or an adjective thus added is called the *predicate noun* or the *predicate adjective*, and the verb is called a *copulative verb*.

4. A verb which requires an object to complete the predicate is called a *transitive verb*.

5. Complete verbs and copulative verbs are called *intransitive verbs*.

21. Verbs, like adjectives and pronouns, have changes in form to correspond to changes in use or in meaning.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

The form of the verb may depend on what its subject is. We say, *I write, thou writest, he writes.*

When a verb-form is used only with a subject of a particular person and number, the verb is said to have the same person and number as the subject. Thus *writes* is used with *he, she, or it*; and as these pronouns are in the third person and singular number, the *s*-form of the verb is called the *third-singular form*.

TENSE FORMS.

22. We say, *I work, I worked, I shall work*, etc., according to the time of the action.

23. The forms or phrases which distinguish time are called *tenses*.

Verbs have six tenses.

The present tense represents a present act or state; as, *I write.*

The past tense represents a past act or state; as, *I wrote.*

The future tense represents an act as future; as, *I shall write.*

The perfect tense represents an act or state as completed in the present; as, *I have written.*

The pluperfect tense represents a past act or state as completed before some other past act or state; as, *I had written when you came.*

The future perfect tense represents a future act or state as completed before some other future act or state; as, *I shall have written before you return.*

Notice that the last four tenses are tense-phrases composed of some form of the verb united with one or more short words.

1. These short words which are used with forms of the verb to make tense-phrases are called *auxiliaries*.

2. In English the relations of time, etc., are expressed in various ways; as, Present, *I love, I am loving, I do love*; Past, *I loved, I was loving, I used to love, I did love*; Future, *I shall love, I shall be loving*.

MOOD.

24. Verbs are used in sentences in various ways or moods. They may be used to assert positively or to ask a question; as, *John wrote a letter; Who wrote the letter?* Thus used, verbs are said to be in the *indicative mood*.

They may be used to represent an action or state doubtfully or conditionally; as, *Though he live, he will be blind; If he were here, he would say the same thing*. Thus used, verbs are said to be in the *subjunctive mood*.

Again, they may be used to command; as, *Bring me your exercise*. Thus used, verbs are said to be in the *imperative mood*.

Various forms of the verb made by using the auxiliaries *may, can, must, might, could, would, and should* are called *potential forms or phrases*.

25. There are two verb-forms which have the uses of a noun. These are called *infinitives*.

Being is better than seeming.

To be is better than to seem.

There are two infinitives,—one the simple form of the verb usually preceded by the word *to*, the other with the ending *-ing*.

26. There are also two forms which have the use of adjectives. These are called *participles*. The present participle has the same form as the infinitive in *ing*. The other is called the *perfect participle*, and usually ends in *t*, *d*, or *n*.

I saw him *driving* a horse.

Give me the rose *broken* from its stem.

27. Most verbs form the past tense and perfect participle by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the simple form of the verb, and are called *regular verbs*. All other verbs are called *irregular*.

28. The present tense (or simple form of the verb), the past tense, and the perfect participle are called the *principal parts*, because, when these are known, all other forms can be found.

29. The orderly arrangement of the forms of the verb is called its *conjugation*.

PASSIVE VERB-FORMS.

30. In sentences containing a transitive verb we found that an object representing the person or thing receiving the action was required; as,—

The boy caught *the horse*.

In this sentence the subject names the *actor*, and the *object* the person or thing acted upon.

The forms of the verb used in such sentences are called the *active forms*.

The same meaning can be conveyed by using the object of the active form as the subject of another form ; as, —

The horse *was caught* by the boy.

This form of the verb is called the *passive form* (or *voice*).

It is made up by adding the perfect participle to any mood and tense of the verb *be*.

ADVERBS.

31. Your task is *very* difficult. Write *carefully*.

The word *very* modifies the adjective *difficult*, *carefully* modifies the verb *write*.

Such words, which modify adjectives or verbs, are called *adverbs*.

You cannot write *too* neatly.

Here the word *too* modifies the adverb *neatly*.

Modifiers of *adverbs* are also called *adverbs*.

An adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

They usually tell *how*, *when*, *where*, etc.

PREPOSITIONS.

32. I have *important* business in Boston.
I have business *of importance* in Boston.
The ship arrived *safely*.
The ship arrived *in safety*.

Notice that the group of words *of importance* in the second sentence is equivalent to the adjective *important* in the sentence

before it, and that *in safety* in the last sentence is equivalent to adverb *safely* in the sentence before it.

Such groups of words which have the uses of adjectives or adverbs are called *adjective* or *adverbial phrases*.

These phrases contain a noun or pronoun with a word like *of* or *in* that connects it with what is modified. Such connective words are called *prepositions*.

The noun or pronoun used with a preposition is in the objective case, and is called its *object*.

CONJUNCTIONS.

33. The night was dark *and* drear.

The night was dark, *and* the rain was falling in torrents.

He came early, *but* did not stay.

A few words like *and*, *but*, above, connect or bind together two sentences, or two parts of a sentence which have the same relation to the rest of the sentence. Such words are called *conjunctions*.

INTERJECTIONS.

34. The eighth part of speech includes a class of words called *interjections*, which are not really parts of the sentences with which they stand. They are merely exclamations, expressing a variety of feelings; as, *oh! ah! alas!*

CHAPTER I.

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V,¹ X, Y, Z. It is the same as the English, with the omission of J and W. The letter I does duty for both I and J.

2. VOWELS.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. They are either *long* (¯), *short* (˘), or *common* (ˆ); that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

All the long vowels will be marked in this book. Unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short.

3. CONSONANTS.

The consonants may be classified as follows:—

$$\text{Mutes: } \begin{cases} p, b, \text{ are } p \text{ mutes.} \\ t, d, \text{ are } t \text{ mutes.} \\ k, c, g, q, \text{ are } k \text{ mutes.} \end{cases}$$

¹ In pronunciation the Romans made *u* and *v* very much alike, and in many books *u* is printed for *v* and *V* for *U*. In fact, *V* is merely a consonant *U*. In this book, however, *u* and *v* are both used.

Liquids: *l, m, n, r*.

Spirants: *f, i* consonant, *s, v*; *s* is also a sibilant.

Double consonants: *x = cs* or *gs*, *z = ds*.

H is only the sign of a rough breathing.

Pronunciation.

NOTE. — Latin is now pronounced differently in different countries. English-speaking people use either the *Roman* or the *English* method.

4.

ROMAN METHOD.

1. *Vowels*.

ā has the sound of *a* in *father*.

ē has the sound of *e* in *fête* (like *a* in *fate*).

ī has the sound of *i* in *machine*.

ō has the sound of *o* in *holy*.

ū has the sound of *oo* in *boot*.

y is rare. It was pronounced like *u* in French, or *ū* in German; that is, half-way between the sounds of *ī* and *ū*, as given above.

The short vowels require less time for utterance, and are pronounced as follows: —

ă is like *a* in *staff* (pronounced broadly).

ĕ is like *e* in *met*.

ĭ is like *i* in *pick*.

ŏ is like *o* in *wholly*.

ŭ is like *oo* in *book*.

2. *Diphthongs*.

ae has the sound of *ai* in *aisle*.

au has the sound of *ow* in *how*.

ei (rare) has the sound of *ei* in *eight*.

eu (rare) has the sound of *eu* in *feud*.

oe has the sound of *oi* in *boil*.

For *ui*, sometimes called a diphthong, see 4, 6.

3. Consonants.

Consonants have generally the same sounds as in English, but -

c has always the sound of *c* in *can*.

g has always the sound of *g* in *game*.

i consonant has always the sound of *y* in *yet*.

s has always the sound of *s* in *son* or *yes*.¹

t has always the sound of *t* in *tone*.²

v has always the sound of *w* in *we*.

ch has always the sound of *k*.

th has always the sound of *th* in *thin*.

4. Syllables.

In a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *a-gri-co-la*, *farmer*. A single consonant between two vowels belongs in the syllable with the following vowel: *a-mā-bam*, *I was loving*.

Two or more consonants between two vowels belong with the following vowel, if they can be pronounced with it:³ *oō-gnō-soō*, *I recognize*; *in-du-stri-a*, *diligence*; *ne-gle-gen-ti-a*, *carelessness*; *for-tis*, *brave*; *al-tis-si-mus*, *highest*; *pu-el-la*, *girl*; *di-xit*, *he said*.

Compound words are divided into their component parts, *sub-it*, *under he goes*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the syllable before the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult the *antepenult*.⁴

¹ Never soft nor like *sh*.

² Never like *t* in *nation*.

³ In other words, any combination of consonants that begins a Latin word can begin a syllable.

⁴ *Ultima* is the Latin word for *last*; *penult* is shortened from *paene ultima*, *almost the last*; and *antepenult* means *before the penult*.

5. *Quantity of Vowels.*

NOTE. — In many instances the quantity of vowels can be learned only by observation, but the following rules will prove useful.

A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *vī-a*, road; *nī-hil*, nothing.

A vowel before *nd* or *nt* is short.

Diphthongs, and vowels produced by contraction are long: *nau-ta*, sailor; *cō-gō* (for *cōāgō*), I collect.

A vowel before *nf*, *ns*, *gm*, *gn*, and consonant *i*, is long: *cōnfer*, compare; *amāns*, loving; *āgmen*, line of march; *cōgnōscō*, recognize; *cōius*, of whom.

6. *Quantity of Syllables.*

A syllable is long by nature when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *mā-ter*, mother; *Cae-sar*, Caesar.

A syllable is long by position when it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants¹ or *x* or *z*: *men-tis*, of the mind; *dux*, leader.

A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a-grī*, fields.

After *q*, *ng*, and sometimes *s*, also in *cuī* (from *quī* and *quis*) and *huic* (from *hīc*), *u* is pronounced together with the preceding letter, as in the English *queen*. It has no effect upon the quantity of the syllable in which or after which it stands: *ali-cuī*, to any one; *un-guī-nis*, of fat; *quīs*, who (interrogative); *quī*, who (relative); *cōn-suē-scō*, I am accustomed.

¹ Observe that a long syllable does not necessarily contain a long vowel. In *mēnsa*, table, the *e* is long; the word is therefore to be pronounced *main-sa*. In *mentis*, of the mind, the *e* is short, and the word is pronounced *mēn-tis*. The letter *h* is not a consonant, and does not affect the length of syllables.

7. *Accent.*

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pa'-ter, father*; *mā'-ter, mother*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when that is long; otherwise on the antepenult: *ca-pel'-la, a goat*; *e-pi'-stu-la, a letter*; *te'-ne-brae, darkness*.

A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls upon the syllable before the enclitic: *ego'que, and I*; *his'ne, shall you go?*

5.

ENGLISH METHOD.

Latin is pronounced by the English method just as if the words were English. The rules for quantity and accent are the same as in the Roman method, but the rules for quantity are generally disregarded except in so far as they affect the accent. In dividing words into syllables those who adopt the English pronunciation should observe the following rules:—

1. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* following a penultimate or any unaccented vowel belongs with the following vowel: *pa-ter, father*; *re-gi-na, queen*; *ma-tro-na, matron*.

2. A single consonant belongs with any preceding accented vowel, not penultimate, except *u*, but not when *e* or *i* before another vowel follows: *dom-i-nus, master*; but *mo-ne-o, I advise*.

3. In all other cases two or more consonants between two vowels are separated: *cor-pus, body*; *im-pro-bus, wicked*.

6.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The kinds of words used in language are called parts of speech. They are the noun, the adjective, the pronoun,

the verb, and the particles, which include the adverb, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection.

7.

GENDER.

The names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *Caesar*, *Caesar*; *vir*, *man*; *Rhēnus*, *Rhine*; *Notus*, *South wind*; *Iānuārius*, *January*.

The names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine: *Iulia*, *Julia*; *filia*, *daughter*; *Italia*, *Italy*; *Rōma*, *Rome*; *Britannia*, *Britain*; *pōpulus*, *poplar*.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil*, *nothing*.

Special rules will be given later.

8.

INFLECTION.

The relations between words are denoted in English for the most part by means of prepositions and auxiliaries or by the order of the words. When we say *the master of the house*, the relation between *master* and *house* is denoted by the preposition *of*; when we say *the dog bites the man*, the relation between the *dog*, the *act of biting*, and the *man*, is denoted by the order of the words; for if the order is reversed, the relations are also reversed. When we say *I love him*, the forms of the words show the relations. In Latin the relations between words are denoted almost exclusively by the forms of the words themselves, the forms being different according to the relations to be expressed. The changes in form which a word undergoes to denote different relations constitute the *Inflection* of the word. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *Declension*; the inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation*.

1. Declension.

Declined words have in Latin six cases: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

The *Nominative* is the case of the subject of the sentence.

The *Genitive* is used to denote possession and some other relations, and is most frequently to be rendered by *of* in English.

The *Dative* is the case of the indirect object, and is most frequently to be rendered by *to* or *for*.

The *Accusative* is the case of the direct object.

The *Vocative* is the case of the person addressed. It has almost always the same form as the *Nominative*.

The *Ablative* expresses various relations to be expressed in English by prepositions; as, *from*, *with*, *by*, *in*, etc.

An additional case (the *Locative*) denoting the place where occurs in the names of towns and a few other words. It has generally the same form as the *Dative* or *Ablative*, sometimes that of the *Genitive*.

There are five ways of declining nouns; hence there are said to be five declensions.

Adjectives and pronouns are also declined, but with different forms for different genders.

2. Conjugation.

Latin verbs have three moods, *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*; also *Infinitives*, *Participles*, *Gerund*, *Gerundive*, and *Supines*.

The tenses of verbs in Latin are the same as in English: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.

There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, the Active and the Passive.

9.

NUMBER.

In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. Inflected words have in Latin different forms for the two numbers.



CHAPTER II.

First or *a*-Declension.

10.

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N.</i>	<i>mēnsa</i> , a table.	<i>mēnsae</i> , tables.
<i>G.</i>	<i>mēnsae</i> , of a table.	<i>mēnsarum</i> , of tables.
<i>D.</i>	<i>mēnsae</i> , to or for a table.	<i>mēnsis</i> , to or for tables.
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mēnsam</i> , table.	<i>mēnsas</i> , tables.
<i>V.</i>	<i>mēnsa</i> , thou table.	<i>mēnsae</i> , ye tables.
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mēnsā</i> , from, by, with, etc., a table.	<i>mēnsis</i> , from, by, with, etc., tables.

1. In the above paradigm which cases are alike?
2. What is the quantity of final *a* in the nominative singular?
3. The cases are formed by adding endings to a common part, called the stem.
4. In the first declension the stem ends in *ā*. This

final *ā* of the stem is called the stem-vowel¹ or characteristic.

5. The stem-vowel joined with the case-ending forms the termination.

6. The stem is *mēnsā*, and may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural.

7. Make a table of terminations from the paradigm above, and commit them to memory.

8. GENDER, — Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.

11.

VOCABULARY.

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia.

domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress.

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story.

Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia.

mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table.

pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture.

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.

rēgina, -ae, *f.*, queen.

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.

serva, -ae, *f.*, female servant, slave.

amat, he, she, or it loves.

amant, they love.

laudat, he, she, or it praises

laudant, they praise.

habet, he, she, or it has.

habent, they have.

nārrat, he, she, or it tells,

nārrant, they tell.

et, conj., and.

quid, what?

Decline the nouns in the vocabulary like *mēnsa*.

12.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. { *Rēgina Iūliam amat,*
Iūliam rēgina amat,
Amat Iūliam rēgina, } *the queen loves Julia.*
2. { *Iūlia amat rēginam,*
Rēginam amat Iūlia,
Amat rēginam Iūlia, } *Julia loves the queen.*

¹ The long stem-vowel is shortened in some cases and disappears in others.

3. { Epistulās Iūlia habet,
Iūlia epistulās habet,
Habet epistulās Iūlia, } *Julia has the letters.*
4. { Puella pictūram habet,
Pictūram habet puella,
Pictūram puella habet, } *the girl has a picture.*

Notice in the above sentences that *a, an, or the* is used in the translation whenever the sense requires it, but that there are no corresponding Latin words. Notice, also, that the subject is in the nominative, and the object in the accusative.

13. RULE. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

14. RULE. — *The direct object is in the accusative.*

15.**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Puella fabulam narrant. 2. Rēgina puellās laudat.
3. Servae dominam amant. 4. Domina servās laudat.
5. Puellae Iūliam laudant. 6. Cornēlia et Iūlia epistulās habent. 7. Domina mēnsam et pictūram habet.
8. Puellae fabulās narrant. 9. Quid habet Cornēlia?
10. Rosam habet.

II. 1. Cornelia tells stories. 2. She praises the servant. 3. The girls have roses. 4. They praise the queen. 5. The girl has a letter. 6. Julia has a table and pictures. 7. The servant loves the mistress. 8. The queen praises Julia and Cornelia. 9. The servants love the girls. 10. What have the girls?



GALLIC SWORD.

CHAPTER III.

First or *a*-Declension. — Continued.*Genitive with Nouns.*

16. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella bonam rēginam amat**, *the girl loves the good queen.*
2. **Rēgina bona servās habet**, *the good queen has servants.*
3. **Iūlia servam Cornēliae laudat**, *Julia praises Cornelia's servant (the servant of Cornelia).*
4. **Rēgina rosae pictūram laudat**, *the queen praises the picture of the rose.*

Notice that these adjectives have the same terminations as their nouns, and that the adjective¹ may precede or follow its noun. Notice, also, that *Cornēliae* limits *servam*; and does not mean the same person; that *rosae* limits *pictūram*, and does not mean the same thing; and that *Cornēliae* and *rosae* are in the genitive.

17. RULE. — *A noun limiting another noun and not meaning the same person or thing is in the genitive.*

18. VOCABULARY.

agricola , -ae, m., farmer.	poēta , -ae, m., poet.
ālā , -ae, f., wing.	alba , white.
columba , -ae, f., dove.	bona , good.
filia , ² -ae, f., daughter.	fida , faithful, trusty.
nauta , -ae, m., sailor.	longa , long.
patria , -ae, f., native land.	

1. Notice the gender of each noun in the above vocabulary. See 10. 8.

¹ The adjective when emphatic precedes its substantive, otherwise it follows it. It more often precedes.

² The dative and ablative plural of *filia* is usually *filiaibus*.

2. The adjective forms given above are to be used only with feminine nouns, and are to be declined like *mēnsa*.

3. Decline together *bona puella*, *rosa alba*, *fida serva*.

19.

EXERCISE.

I. 1. Poēta bonam fābulam nārrat. 2. Agricolaē fidās servās laudant. 3. Fīlia agricolae albam columbam habet. 4. Rēgīna bonam puellam amat. 5. Fīliae nautārum longās epistulās habent. 6. Nautae longās fābulās nārrant. 7. Columba albās ālās habet. 8. Puella poētārum fābulās laudat. 9. Domina Iūliae mēnsam longam habet. 10. Nauta patriam amat.

II. 1. Poets tell good stories. 2. Cornelia loves the good daughter of the sailor. 3. The queen's daughter has pictures. 4. The faithful girl loves the good queen. 5. The poet praises the good girl's letter. 6. The sailor tells a good story. 7. Julia has faithful servants. 8. What has the farmer's daughter? 9. She has a white rose. 10. He praises the poet's native land.



CHAPTER IV.

Present Indicative of Sum.

*Agreement of Verbs.*20. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.

First Person, *sum*, *I am*.

Second Person, *es*, *you are* (sing.).

Third Person, *est*, *he, she, or it is*.

PLURAL.

sumus, *we are*.

estis, *you are* (pl.).

sunt, *they are*.

21. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella rosās habet, the girl has roses.*
2. *Puellae rosās habent, the girls have roses.*
3. *Est bona, she is good.*
4. *Sumus fidae, we are faithful.*

Notice that the subjects in (3) and (4) are not expressed by separate words, but by the form of the verbs. Notice, also, that the verbs have different forms for subjects of different persons and numbers.

22. RULE. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

23. VOCABULARY.

<i>aqua</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , water.	<i>magna</i> , large.
<i>Britannia</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Britain.	<i>parva</i> , small.
<i>silva</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , forest, woods.	<i>sum</i> , I am.
<i>grāta</i> , welcome, pleasing.	<i>in</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), in, on.
<i>laeta</i> , glad, cheerful.	<i>sed, conj.</i> , but.
<i>lāta</i> , broad.	<i>ubi, adv.</i> , where?

24. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Sumus laetae.* 2. *Estis bonae.* 3. *Silvae Britanniae sunt magnae.* 4. *Ubi est aqua?* 5. *Aqua est in silvā.* 6. *Fabulae poetarum sunt gratae.* 7. *Agricultor mēsa est lāta.* 8. *Alae columbarum sunt albae.* 9. *Es fida.* 10. *Rēgina filiam¹ parvam laudat.* 11. *Picturae sunt gratae.* 12. *Rēgina est in Britannia, sed filia est in patria.*

¹ The genitive when it is emphatic is put before the noun which it limits.

² The possessive pronouns *his*, *her*, *its*, and *their*, are often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in translating.

II. 1. I am glad. 2. We are small. 3. Water is good. 4. You are faithful. 5. The sailor's letters are welcome. 6. The native land of the queen is large. 7. (There)¹ are broad forests in Britain. 8. The servants love (their) good mistress. 9. The poet tells a pleasing story. 10. (There) are doves in the forests. 11. What has the little girl? 12. She has a white dove. 13. The farmer is in the woods.



CHAPTER V.

Predicate Noun ; Appositive.

25. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella est serva, the girl is a slave.*
2. *Poëta est agricola, the poet is a farmer.*
3. *Iulia est bona domina, Julia is a good mistress.*

Notice that *serva*, *agricola*, and *domina* are in the predicate and denote the same person as *puella*, *poëta*, and *Iulia*. A noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*.

26. RULE. — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

27. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Poëta Iuliam filiam amat, the poet loves his daughter Julia.*
2. *Poëta servam Iuliae filiae laudat, the poet praises the servant of his daughter Julia.*

¹ Words in parenthesis are not to be expressed in Latin.

Notice that *fīliam* denotes the same person as *Iūliam*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Notice, also, that *fīliae* denotes the same person as *Iūliae*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Nouns thus used are called *appositives*.

28. RULE. — *The appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

29.

VOCABULARY.

aquila , -ae, <i>f.</i> , eagle.	pecūnia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , money, a sum of money.
fēmina , -ae, <i>f.</i> , woman.	cāra , dear.
Galba , -ae, <i>m.</i> , Galba.	multa , much ; <i>pl.</i> , many.
Graecia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Greece.	vocat , he calls.
incola , -ae, <i>m. and f.</i> , inhabitant.	vocant , they call.
īnsula , -ae, <i>f.</i> , island.	

30.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es cāra filia. 2. Aquila est silvārum incola. 3. Graecia est poētārum patria. 4. Poēta fīliam Cornēliam amat. 5. Ālae aquilārum sunt lātae. 6. Fēmina puellās parvās vocat. 7. Britannia est magna īnsula. 8. Rēgīnae filia magnam pecūniam habet. 9. Nautae fīliae sunt fīdae servae. 10. Agricolae multās columbās habent. 11. Ubi est agricola Galba ?

II. 1. The queen is a good woman. 2. She praises (her) daughter Julia. 3. (There) are large forests in (my) native land. 4. The little girl calls (her) doves. 5. The inhabitants of the island are sailors. 6. Cornelia's letters are welcome. 7. The wings of the dove are long and white. 8. (There) is good water on the island. 9. I am a farmer, but you are a sailor. 10. The queen and (her) daughter Julia are glad.

CHAPTER VI.

Second or o-Declension: Nouns in -us.

Indirect Object.

31.

PARADIGM.

servus, m., slave.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	servus	servi
G.	servi	servōrum
D.	servō	serviis
Ac.	servum	servōs
V.	serve	servi
Ab.	servō	serviis

1. In the above paradigm, what cases are alike?
2. The stem ends in -ō; as, servō-.
3. The stem may be found by dropping the ending -um of the genitive plural, and changing ō to ō.
4. Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.
5. GENDER. — Nouns in -us of the second declension are masculine.

32.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Galba filiae fabulam narrat, Galba tells a story to his daughter.
2. Nautae agricolis fabulas narrant, the sailors tell stories to the farmers.

Notice that *filiae* is in the dative and depends upon *narrat*; and that *agricolis* is in the dative and depends upon *narrant*. Such datives are called *indirect objects*.

33. RULE. — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

34.

VOCABULARY.

amicus, -i, *m.*, friend.**diligentia**, -ae, *f.*, diligence.**dominus**, -i, *m.*, master (of servants).**equus**, -i, *m.*, horse.**fillus**,¹ -i, *m.*, son.**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden.**servus**, -i, *m.*, servant,
slave.**Titus**, -i, *m.*, Titus.**dat**, he gives.**dant**, they give.

1. Each of the adjectives thus far introduced, when used with masculine nouns, has a masculine form declined like *servus*. For the feminine form, see 18.

2. Decline together *bonus servus*, *hortus magnus*, *albus equus*, *laetus nauta*.

35.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Amicus Galbae multos equos habet.* 2. *Equus albus est in horto agricolae.* 3. *Titus filio equum album dat.* 4. *Dominus bonos servos laudat.* 5. *Dominus servis fide pecuniam dant.* 6. *Feminae diligentiam servarum laudant.* 7. *Filius agricolae magnum hortum habet.* 8. *Femina amico carum epistulam longam dat.* 9. *Nautae sunt amici reginae.* 10. *Ubi, Tite, est equus agricolae Galbae?* 11. *In horto est agricolae Galbae equus.*

II. 1. The slave has a good horse. 2. The islands of Greece are many. 3. He tells good stories to (his) friends. 4. They are friends of Titus. 5. There are many horses on the island. 6. The island is small, but it has many inhabitants. 7. The slaves praise (their) master's daughter. 8. The poet is an inhabitant of Britain. 9. He gives water to (his) friend's horses. 10. Eagles have broad wings.

¹ Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* generally contract *ii* of the genitive singular into *i*. *Filius* has vocative *fili*.

CHAPTER VII.

**Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in -um;
Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.**

*Agreement of Adjectives.***36.****PARADIGM.****bellum, n., war.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	bellum	bella
<i>G.</i>	belli	bellōrum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	bellō	bellis

1. The stem ends in *ō*; as, bellō.
2. GENDER. — Nouns in -um are neuter.
3. Each adjective thus far introduced, when used with a neuter noun, has a neuter form declined like bellum.

These adjectives are declined in full as follows:—

37.**PARADIGM.****Bonus, good.**

	SINGULAR.	
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>G.</i> bonī	bonae	boni
<i>D.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Ac.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>V.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Ab.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i> <i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	boni	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>D.</i>	bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Ac.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>V.</i>	boni	bonae	bona
<i>Ab.</i>	bonis	bonis	bonis

38. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Hortus est magnus. | 5. Dōnum est magnum. |
| 2. Horti sunt magni. | 6. Dōna sunt magna. |
| 3. Mēnsa est magna. | 7. Laetum nautam amat. |
| 4. Mēnsae sunt māgnae. | 8. Laetōs nautās amant. |

Observe that each noun in the preceding sentences is limited by an adjective, and that each adjective has the same gender, number, and case as its noun. Notice especially *laetum* and *laetōs*.

39. RULE. — *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

40. VOCABULARY.

bellum, -i, <i>n.</i> , war.	Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman ; as a noun, a Roman.
concilium, ¹ -ī, <i>n.</i> , meeting, council.	cēlat, he conceals.
dōnum, -i, <i>n.</i> , gift.	cēlant, they conceal.
iniūria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , wrong.	convocat, he calls together.
nūntius, ¹ -i, <i>m.</i> , a messenger.	convocant, they call together.
Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetian ; as a noun, a Helvetian.	culpat, he blames.
malus, -a, -um, bad.	culpant, they blame.

¹ See p. 17, footnote.

Adjectives already used in the masculine or feminine : —

albus, -a, -um.
bonus, -a, -um.
cārus, -a, -um.
fidus, -a, -um.
grātus, -a, -um.

laetus, -a, -um.
lātus, -a, -um.
longus, -a, -um.
māgnus, -a, -um.
multus, -a, -um.
parvus, -a, -um.

41.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nautae laetī. 2. Nautae laetō. 3. Poētārum bonōrum. 4. In hortō magnō. 5. Nautam parvum. 6. Equīs albīs. 7. Multī poētae. 8. Multōrum agricolārum. 9. Bonō servō. 10. Agricolās multōs.

II. 1. Malus servus in silvā equum dominī cōlat. 2. Nūntius fidus concilium Rōmānōrum convocat. 3. Amīcīs multa dōna dat. 4. Dominī iniuriās servōrum cōlant. 5. Nauta agricolae grātum dōnum dat. 6. Ālae columbārum albārum sunt magnae. 7. Nūntius Rōmānōrum in conciliō Helvētiōs culpat. 8. Incolae Britanniae rēginam amant. 9. Bellum in Graeciā est magnum. 10. In silvā sunt magnae aquilae. 11. Ubi, amīce, est equus nūntī?

III. 1. The messenger tells a long story to the Romans. 2. We are faithful servants. 3. The slave conceals (his) money in the garden. 4. He is a Roman messenger. 5. The poet's little son is fond of stories. 6. (There) are large roses in the garden. 7. Galba is a friend of the Helvetians. 8. The farmer's son has a large horse. 9. The servant is calling (his) master's horses. 10. He calls together (his) dear friends. 11. The diligence of the girls is great.

CHAPTER VIII.

Second or o-Declension: Nouns in *-er* and *-ir*.*Imperfect Indicative of the Verb Sum.*

42.

PARADIGMS.

	puer, m., boy.	ager, ¹ m., field.	vir, m., man.
	SINGULAR.		
N.	puer	ager	vir
G.	puerī	agrī	virī
D.	puerō	agrō	virō
Ac.	puerum	agrum	virum
V.	puer	ager	vir
Ab.	puerō	agrō	virō
	PLURAL.		
N.	puerī	agrī	virī
G.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
D.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Ac.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
V.	puerī	agrī	virī
Ab.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

1. How do the terminations of nouns in *-er* and *-ir* differ from those of nouns in *-us*?

2. What is the stem of puer? of ager? See 31. 3.

3. Decline together puer parvus, latus ager, vir fidus.

4. GENDER. — Nouns in *-er* and *-ir* of the second declension are masculine.

¹ Most nouns in *-er* are declined like ager. The only one in this book declined like puer is liberī (plural).

43. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.

1. *eram, I was.*
2. *erās, you were.*
3. *erat, he was.*

PLURAL.

- erāmus, we were.*
- erātis, you were.*
- erant, they were.*

44.

VOCABULARY.

ager, agri, *m.*, field.discipulus, -i, *m.*, pupil.liberi, -ōrum, *m.*, children.magister, -tri, *m.*, teacher.Mārcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus.puer, pueri, *m.*, boy.vir, viri, *m.*, man.

peritus, -a, -um, skillful.

nōn, *adv.*, not.semper, *adv.*, always.

45.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fīlius Titī erat nōn laetus. 2. Eram amicus fili magistri. 3. Erās semper fidus amicus. 4. Poēta Rōmānus dīligentiam agricolae peritī laudat. 5. Vir equum amīcī in agrō habet. 6. Erāmus discipulī fidī. 7. Amīcus Galbae erat agricola peritus. 8. Rōmānī concilium convocant et nūntium Helvētiōrum culpant. 9. Helvētīī fēminās et liberōs in silvā cēlant. 10. Magister bonōs puērōs semper laudat. 11. Rōmānī iniuriās Helvētiōrum culpant. 12. Mārcus semper erat poētārum amīcus.

II. 1. Many were the wars of the Romans. 2. You were good children. 3. Galba was a welcome messenger. 4. The man gives a horse to his son. 5. The Roman farmers were not skillful. 6. The bad boys were in the farmer's garden. 7. The letters of friends are always welcome. 8. You were a faithful pupil, but (your) friend Marcus was not faithful. 9. We were always good boys. 10. Good masters do not always have faithful servants. 11. Galba's horse is the gift of a friend.

¹ See footnote to 40.

CHAPTER IX.

Adjectives in *-er*.*Future Indicative of the Verb Sum ; Dative of Possessor.*

46.

PARADIGMS.

Miser, wretched.

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	miser	miseræ	miserum
<i>G.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miserī
<i>D.</i>	miserō	miseræ	miserō
<i>Ac.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>V.</i>	miser	miseræ	miserum
<i>Ab.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō
	PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miseræ
<i>G.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>D.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Ac.</i>	miserōs	miserās	miseræ
<i>V.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miseræ
<i>Ab.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

Pulcher, beautiful.

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>G.</i>	pulchrī	pulchræ	pulchrī
<i>D.</i>	pulchrō	pulchræ	pulchrō
<i>Ac.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>V.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Ab.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

	Masculine.	FLURAL.	
		Feminine.	Neuter.
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchris	pulchris
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
V.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Ab.	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

1. Observe that the masculine has the same peculiarities as substantives in *-er*. What are they?

2. Most adjectives in *-er* of the second declension are declined like *pulcher*. The only exceptions in this book are *miser* and *liber* (and the irregular *alter*, 167). Decline together *miser servus*, *equus niger*.

47. FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	<i>erō, I shall be.</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be.</i>
2.	<i>eris, you will be.</i>	<i>eritis, you will be.</i>
3.	<i>erit, he will be.</i>	<i>erunt, they will be.</i>

48. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puer librum habet, the boy has a book.*
2. *Est puerō liber, the boy has (there is to the boy) a book.*
3. *Titus equum habet, Titus has a horse.*
4. *Est Titō equus, Titus has (there is to Titus) a horse.*

1. Notice the two ways of expressing possession. The form with the dative and the verb *sum* should be used in the exercises, unless the teacher prefer to have the sentence expressed in two ways. The dative thus used is called the *dative of possessor*.

49. RULE. — *The dative is used with sum to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

50.

VOCABULARY.

carrus , -i, <i>m.</i> , cart.	niger , -gra, -grum, black.
frumentum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , grain.	pulcher , -chra, -chrum, beautiful.
liber , -brī, <i>m.</i> , book.	
dēfessus , -a, -um, tired.	dēlectat , he pleases, delights.
liber , -era, -erum, free.	dēlectant , they please, delight.
miser , -era, -erum, wretched, unhappy.	

51.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es agricola, eris poëta. 2. Nūntius in silvā equum dēfessum cēlat. 3. Filiō agricolae est carrus māgnus. 4. Filius agricolae carrum māgnum habet. 5. Vir frumentum nōn habet. 6. Virō est frumentum in carrō. 7. Aqua erit in mēnsā servī. 8. Equī nūntiōrum erunt dēfessī. 9. Helvētīi erant liberī. 10. Vir filiae pulchrum librum dat. 11. Agrī et silvae semper poētā dēlectant. 12. Perītī magistrī dīligentiam dīscipulōrum laudant. 13. Eritis amīcī puerōrum miserōrum. 14. Mārcus nigrō equō frumentum dat. 15. Erimus fidī dīscipulī.

II. 1. I shall be tired. 2. The boy has a beautiful book. 3. He gives the boy a white dove. 4. He calls together the friends of the messenger. 5. Where are the master's books? 6. The diligence of the boy delights (his) faithful teacher. 7. You will be welcome, and we shall be glad. 8. There will be a meeting of teachers in my friend's garden. 9. The slaves were unhappy. 10. He always praises the faithful.¹ 11. The children have many presents.

¹ Plural adjectives are frequently used in Latin, as in English, without a substantive. When the substantive understood denotes persons, the adjective should be in the masculine; but when the word *things* can be understood, the adjective should be neuter.

Compare the English, "The land of the *free*, and the home of the *brave*."

CHAPTER X.

Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

52.

PARADIGMS.

	princeps, m., <i>chief.</i>	rēx, m., <i>king.</i>	miles, m., <i>soldier.</i>	caput, n., <i>head.</i>
	Stem princip-	rēg-	milit-	capit-
	SINGULAR.			
<i>N., V.</i>	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
<i>G.</i>	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
<i>D.</i>	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
<i>Ac.</i>	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
<i>Ab.</i>	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite
	PLURAL.			
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
<i>G.</i>	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

1. In the third declension, the stem ends in a consonant or *i*.

2. Stems ending in a consonant, are classed according to their final letter, as mute stems and liquid stems.¹

3. To find the stem, drop the ending *-um* of the genitive plural.

4. Make a table of the case-endings from *princeps*.

5. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative.

¹ For sibilant stems, see 61.

What happens when *c* (see *iūdex*, *-icis*, in 53) or *g* precedes the ending *s*? When *t* precedes the ending *s*?

53.

VOCABULARY.

caput, *-itis*, *n.*, head.
iūdex, *-icis*, *m.*, judge.
mīles, *-itis*, *m.*, soldier.
pīlum, *-ī*, *n.*, javelin.
princeps, *-ipis*, *m.*, chief.

rēx, *rēgis*, *m.*, king.
cottīdiē, *adv.*, daily.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
vāstat, he lays waste.
vāstant, they lay waste.

54.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Mīles multās bellī fābulās puerīs cottīdiē nārrat.*
 2. *Bella longa bonōs virōs nōn dēlectant.* 3. *Militēs agrōs agricolārum vāstant.* 4. *Rēx multōs¹ et fidōs servōs habet.*
 5. *Iūdicī sunt multī et bonī librī.* 6. *Rēgēs et princīpēs saepe multōs et pulchrōs equōs habent.* 7. *Fīlius militis erat perītus agricola.* 8. *Iūdex puerīs librōs bonōs dat.*
 9. *Multī puerī fābulās militum amant.* 10. *Caput equī nigrī est parvum.* 11. *Militēs Rōmānī longa pīla habent.*

II. 1. The horse has a large head. 2. The king's soldiers lay waste the broad fields. 3. The judge's son has many friends. 4. The chiefs of the Helvetians give grain to their friends. 5. The teacher praises (his) faithful pupils. 6. The wretched slave will be free. 7. Good books do not always delight children. 8. The soldier gives grain and water to (his) tired horses. 9. The soldier has a large black horse. 10. The farmer has grain in (his) cart. 11. Good chiefs have faithful soldiers.

¹ In Latin two adjectives limiting the same substantive are generally connected by the conjunction *et*.

CHAPTER XI.

Third Declension: Mute Stems. — *Continued.**First Conjugation, Present Indicative Active.*

55.

PARADIGMS.

	voluptās, <i>f.</i> , <i>pleasure.</i>	pēs, <i>m.</i> , <i>foot.</i>	cūstōs, <i>m. and</i> <i>f., keeper.</i>
Stem	voluptāt-	ped-	cūstōd-
SINGULAR.			
<i>N., V.</i>	voluptās	pēs	cūstōs
<i>G.</i>	voluptātis	pedis	cūstōdis
<i>D.</i>	voluptāti	pedi	cūstōdī
<i>Ac.</i>	voluptātem	pedem	cūstōdem
<i>Ab.</i>	voluptāte	pede	cūstōde
PLURAL.			
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	voluptātēs	pedēs	cūstōdēs
<i>G.</i>	voluptātum	pedum	cūstōdum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	voluptātibus	pedibus	cūstōdibus

What happens when *d* or *t* precedes the nominative ending *s*?

56.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts¹ of Amō.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
amō, <i>I love;</i>	amāre, <i>to love;</i>	amāvī, <i>I loved;</i>	amātum, <i>to love.</i>

¹ These are called principal parts because, when these are known, all forms of the verb may be readily found.

The supine is the same in form as the neuter of the perfect participle. In the absence of this form the future active participle is sometimes given.

1. To find the present stem of a verb, drop the final *re* of the present infinitive active.

2. Verbs are said to be of the first conjugation, when the present stem ends in *ā*; i.e. when the present infinitive active ends in *āre*.

3. Give the principal parts of *laudō, narrā, vocō, cōlō, culpō, dēlectō, vāstō*.

4. *Dō, dāre, dedi, dātum*, which resembles a verb of the first conjugation, has a short stem-vowel, *ā*.

57.

PARADIGM.

Present Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>amō, I love.</i> ¹	<i>amāmus, we love.</i>
2. <i>amās, you love.</i>	<i>amātis, you love.</i>
3. <i>amat, he loves.</i>	<i>amant, they love.</i>

Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

58.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Laudō, laudāmus.* 2. *Narrās, narrātis.* 3. *Puer vocat, equum vocat.* 4. *Cēlās, cēlāmus.* 5. *Agricola servum culpāt.* 6. *Militēs culpās.* 7. *Puellās culpāmus.* 8. *Aquam equis damus.* 9. *Puerōs vocās.* 10. *Fidōs servōs laudātis.*

II. 1. I tell, we tell. 2. You are praising, he does praise. 3. We are calling, he is calling. 4. I conceal, you are concealing. 5. He is calling, the master is

¹ Also *I do love*, and *I am loving*.

calling. 6. He calls together the chiefs. 7. He is calling together (his) friends. 8. It delights the poet. 9. We give gifts. 10. He does give gifts.

59.

VOCABULARY.

comes, -itis, m. and f., companion.	liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set free.
cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f., guard, keeper.	parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare, procure.
eques, -itis, m., horseman; <i>in plural,</i> cavalry.	parātus, -a, -um (<i>perf. part. of parō, used as adj.</i>), prepared, ready.
lapis, -idis, m., stone.	currit, he runs.
obses, -idis, m. and f., hostage.	currunt, they run.
pēs, pedis, m., foot.	in (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), into, to, against.
voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.	

60.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equitī pulchrum equum dō. 2. Amāmus fidōs amicōs. 3. Rēx mlitēs dēfessōs culpat. 4. Liberī principum Helvētiōrum erant obsidēs. 5. Librōs comitum cēlās. 6. Comes nautae erat miser. 7. Iūdicis filium cottidiē laudāmus. 8. Multae sunt voluptātēs agricolae filiōrum. 9. Caput equī est nigrum, sed pedēs sunt albī. 10. Fidī cūstōdēs nōn sunt rēgl. 11. In agrīs erant lapidēs multī. 12. Agrōs rēgis vāstātis. 13. Equitēs equis frumentum parant. 14. Equus iūdicis in hortum currit. 15. Helvētiī parātī erant obsidēs dare.

II. 1. Many (men) love pleasure. 2. The weary soldier conceals (his) wrong. 3. The hostages of the Romans run into the woods. 4. The companions of kings are not always good. 5. The soldier's javelin was long. 6. The cavalry set free the hostages. 7. I often censure bad pupils, and you always love the good. 8. The feet of

the horsemen will be free. 9. The horsemen have grain in carts. 10. We tell stories to the little children every day.

—••••—

CHAPTER XII.

Third Declension: Liquid Stems.

First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Active.

61.

PARADIGMS.

	cōnsul, <i>m.</i> , consul.	victor, <i>m.</i> , victor.	virgō, <i>f.</i> , virgin.	vulnus, <i>n.</i> , wound.
Stem	cōnsul-	victor-	virgin-	vulner- ¹
SINGULAR.				
<i>N., V.</i>	cōnsul	victor	virgō	vulnus
<i>G.</i>	cōnsulis	victōris	virginis	vulneris
<i>D.</i>	cōnsuli	victōrī	virginī	vulnerī
<i>Ac.</i>	cōnsulem	victōrem	virginem	vulnus
<i>Ab.</i>	cōnsule	victōre	virgine	vulnere
PLURAL.				
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	virginēs	vulnera
<i>G.</i>	cōnsulum	victōrum	virginum	vulnerum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	cōnsulibus	victōribus	virginibus	vulneribus

62. In English, questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* require no interrogative word. For the Latin method of expressing such questions, see the following sentences:—

¹ This was originally an *s* stem, but *s* was changed to *r*.

1. **Puerumne, Iúlia, culpās ?** *Do you blame the boy, Julia ?*
2. **Nōne servus est miser ?** *Is not the slave unhappy ? or, The slave is unhappy, is he not ?*
3. **Num magister vocat ?** *Is the master calling ? or, The master is not calling, is he ?*

The interrogative *ne* is an enclitic, always appended to the emphatic word. See 4. and 7.

Nōne expects the answer *yes*; *num* expects the answer *no*; *ne* does not indicate what answer is expected.

63.

PARADIGM.

Imperfect Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. amābam , <i>I was loving.</i> ¹ | amābāmus , <i>we were loving.</i> |
| 2. amābās , <i>you were loving.</i> | amābātis , <i>you were loving.</i> |
| 3. amābat , <i>he was loving.</i> | amābant , <i>they were loving.</i> |

Inflect the imperfect indicative active of *laudō*, *narrō*, *vocō*, *dō*, *cōlō*, *culpō*, *parō*, *vāstō*.

64.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Culpābās, culpābātis.* 2. *Laudābam, laudābāmus.*
 3. *Cēlābat, cēlābant.* 4. *Parābam, parābat, parābant.*
 5. *Puellās laudābat, cottīdiē laudat.* 6. *Nārrābās, puellae nārrābant.* 7. *Vocābam, vocābāmus.* 8. *Dabat, dabās, dabant.* 9. *Columbam liberābat.* 10. *Prīncipem culpāmus.*

II. 1. *I was blaming, we were blaming.* 2. *He was praising, they were praising.* 3. *You were calling, he was calling.* 4. *I was calling, we were calling.* 5. *He was giving, we were giving.* 6. *He was telling, the boy is telling.* 7. *I am preparing, I was preparing.* 8. *They are laying waste, he is laying waste.* 9. *He was freeing the slaves.* 10. *We were concealing the money.*

¹ Also *I loved, I did love, I used to love.*

65.

VOCABULARY.

clāmor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , shout, noise.	vulnus, -eris, <i>n.</i> , wound.
cōsul, -ulis, <i>m.</i> , consul.	ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, deck, adorn.
corōna, -ae, <i>f.</i> , crown, garland.	mittit, he sends.
nōmen, -inis, <i>n.</i> , name.	mittunt, they send.
oppidum, -i, <i>n.</i> , town.	ē, ¹ ex (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), from, out of.
soror, -ōris, <i>f.</i> , sister.	ne,
victor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , conqueror, victor.	nōne, } <i>signs of questions.</i>
virgō, -inis, <i>f.</i> , maiden, virgin.	num, }

66.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs cōsulis ex oppidō currunt. 2. Nōne magister clāmōrem puerōrum culpat? 3. Victōrēs Rōmānōrum corōna ōrnābat. 4. Nōmen virginis erat Iūlia. 5. Cūstōdēsne obsidum culpābās? 6. Bonum rēgem et iūdicem laudābāmus. 7. Cēlābātis, puerī, librōs sorōris. 8. Obsidī aquam dabam. 9. Servī principis agrōs parābant. 10. Num mīles vulnera cēlābat? 11. Cōsul ex agrīs in oppidum militēs multōs mittit. 12. Liberōs in Britanniam obsidēs mittunt. 13. Nōne parātus eris victōrem ōrnāre? 14. Cōsuli voluptātēs nōn multae sunt.

II. 1. A crown was adorning the head of the victor. 2. Do you praise the diligence of the pupils every day? 3. The soldiers are sending (their) children out of the town. 4. (My) sister's horse is black. 5. Galba runs into the field and calls the horse. 6. Was not the maiden's companion a Roman knight (*eques*)? 7. We were setting free the feet of the slaves. 8. There were many stones in the garden. 9. The Roman consul is laying waste the towns and fields. 10. The shouts of the pupils did not delight the master.

¹ ē is used before consonants, ex before vowels and consonants.

CHAPTER XIII.

Third Declension. — Continued.

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Active; Ablative of Instrument.

67.

PARADIGM.

Future Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.

1. amābō, *I shall love.*
2. amābis, *you will love.*
3. amābit, *he will love.*

PLURAL.

- amābimus, *we shall love.*
- amābitis, *you will love.*
- amābunt, *they will love.*

68.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Laudābit, laudābunt. 2. Ōrnābō, ōrnābimus.
 3. Nārrāmus, nārrābāmus, nārrābimus. 4. Vāstat, vāstābat, vāstābit. 5. Cēlābās, cēlābis, cēlābunt. 6. Vocābit, ōrnābat, ōrnat. 7. Dabō, dabimus, dabunt. 8. Vocābitis, vocābātis, vocātis. 9. Dēlectat, dēlectābit, dēlectābat. 10. Ōrnāmus, ōrnābāmus, ōrnābant.

II. 1. I shall praise, we shall praise. 2. He is calling, he was telling, I shall tell. 3. We shall conceal, he will conceal. 4. I shall set free, we shall set free, they will set free. 5. He will give, you will give, they will give. 6. We will call, it will delight, they will deck. 7. He is blaming, they were blaming, I shall blame. 8. He will prepare, they will prepare, you will prepare. 9. He will tell, I was telling, they will tell. 10. We were praising, he will call, you will tell.

69. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella rosīs caput ōrnat, the girl adorns her head with roses.*
2. *Poēta fābulīs liberōs dēlectat, the poet delights his children with stories.*
3. *Lapide equitem vulnerat, he wounds the horseman with a stone.*

Observe that *rosīs*, *fābulīs*, and *lapide* are in the ablative case, and that they show the instrument or means employed in doing the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument or means*.

70. RULE. — *Instrument or means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

71. VOCABULARY.

arbor , -oris, <i>f.</i> , tree.	Graeci , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Greeks.
carmen , -inis, <i>n.</i> , song, poem.	vulnerō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wound.
Caesar , -aris, <i>m.</i> , Caesar.	portō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, carry.
Gallia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Gaul.	ad (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), to, towards, for, near.
Homērus , -i, <i>m.</i> , Homer.	ā , ¹ ab , (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), from, by.
homō , -inis, <i>m.</i> , man.	
pater , patris, <i>m.</i> , father.	
Graecus , -a, -um, Greek.	

72. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Homērum, principem Graecōrum poētārum, magistrī et discipulī laudābant. 2. Multi liberī principum Galliae obsidēs erant Caesaris. 3. Arborēs multae et lātae rēgis hortum ōrant. 4. Nōne mīles pilō equitem vulnerābit? 5. Bonī puerī columbam pulchram

¹ Usually **ā** before consonants, always **ab** before vowels and *h*.

lapide nōn vulnerābunt. 6. Virginēs patrem amant et laudant. 7. Carmina poētae multōs hominēs dēlectant. 8. Bonōs librōs amābis, nōn cēlābis. 9. Cūstōdibus pīla dabimus, obsidibus aquam. 10. Eques in capite vulnus habet. 11. Nūntius ab Helvētiis ad Caesarem dōna portat. 12. Puer librum ad sorōrem mittit. 13. Amīcis voluptātēs multās pecūniā parābat.

II. 1. Men love (their) children, and often praise (them). 2. The victors will bring grain from the fields. 3. The shouts of the soldiers will not wound the horsemen of Caesar. 4. The maiden has a crown of roses. 5. Bad men are not good companions, are they? 6. The horse's feet are in the water. 7. The names of the pupils are in the master's book. 8. You will give a book to (your) father, but a rose to (your) sister. 9. Will you set free the sister of the consul? 10. The boy is ready to carry a letter to (his) father.



CHAPTER XIV.

Third Declension : Stems in i.

First Conjugation, Perfect Indicative Active; Perfect Indicative of Sum; Ablative of Manner.

73.

PARADIGMS,

	ignis, m.,	hostis, m. and f.,	caedēs, f.,
	<i>fire.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>	<i>slaughter.</i>
Stem	igni-	hosti-	caedi-

SINGULAR.

N., V.	ignis	hostis	caedēs
G.	ignis	hostis	caedis
D.	ignī	hostī	caedi
Ac.	ignem	hostem	caedem
Ab.	ignī, -e	hoste	caede

PLURAL.

N., V.	ignēs	hostēs	caedēs
G.	ignium	hostium	caedium
D., Ab.	ignibus	hostibus	caedibus
Ac.	ignēs, -is	hostēs, -is	caedēs, -is

1. Most nouns in *-is* are declined like *hostis*, some like *ignis*; but a few have only *im* in the accusative singular, and only *i* in the ablative singular.

2. Whenever any of these nouns are introduced in this book that are not declined like *hostis*, their peculiarities will be given.

3. Nouns in *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive (that is, not having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative) are declined like *caedēs*.

74.

PARADIGMS.

Perfect Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1.	amāvī,	{ I loved. I have loved.	amāvimus,	{ we loved. we have loved.
2.	amāvistī,	{ you loved. you have loved.	amāvistis,	{ you loved. you have loved.
3.	amāvit,	{ he loved. he has loved	amāverunt or amāvere,	{ they loved. they have loved.

Perfect Indicative of Sum.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. fui,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ was.} \\ I \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$	fui ^{mus} ,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} we \text{ were.} \\ we \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$
2. fuisti,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} you \text{ were.} \\ you \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$	fui ^{stis} ,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} you \text{ were.} \\ you \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$
3. fuit,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} he \text{ was.} \\ he \text{ has been.} \end{array} \right.$	fue ^{runt} or fue ^{re} ,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} they \text{ were.} \\ they \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$

1. Notice that the perfect stem of *amō* is the present stem + *v*. It may be found in any verb by dropping the final *i* of the first person of the perfect indicative active.

2. Observe that the endings of the perfect are the same for both *sum* and *amō*. Make a table of them, and commit to memory.

75.**EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. Portābit, portāvit, portāvērunt. 2. Parāvī, parāvimus, parāvērunt. 3. Vocāvistī, vocāvistis, vocābitis. 4. Laudāvī, laudāvit, laudāvērunt. 5. Laudās, laudābās, laudābis. 6. Liberāvit, dedit, cēlāvit. 7. Dedistī, dedistis, culpāvī. 8. Vulnerābis, vulnerābās, vulnerāvit. 9. Vulnerāvī, vulnerāvērunt, vulnerāvistis. 10. Vāstāvit, parāvit, convocāvit.

II. 1. I was carrying, you were calling, he will tell. 2. He has carried, you called, he concealed. 3. I have given, you gave, it delighted. 4. I shall lay waste, I shall call, we shall tell. 5. He was carrying, he will carry, he has carried. 6. He was concealing, he has concealed, they concealed. 7. He praised, he has blamed, they have called. 8. You were preparing, you will carry, you will call. 9. They adorn, will adorn, have adorned. 10. He will wound, was wounding, is wounding.

76. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Agricola frūmentum cum dīligentiā in oppidum portābat*, the farmer was carrying grain into the town with diligence.
2. *Agricola magnā cum dīligentiā in oppidum frūmentum portābat*, the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.
3. *Agricola magnā dīligentiā in oppidum frūmentum portābat*, the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.

Observe that in the sentences *cum dīligentiā*, *magnā cum dīligentiā*, and *magnā dīligentiā*, show the manner of the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of manner*.

77. RULE. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with cum, or a limiting adjective, or with both.*

Manner may also, as in English, be expressed by an adverb.

78. VOCABULARY.

<i>caedēs</i> , -is, <i>f.</i> , slaughter, murder.	<i>occupō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize,
<i>fīnis</i> , -is, <i>m.</i> , end ; <i>pl.</i> , territory.	take.
<i>gladius</i> , -i, <i>m.</i> , sword.	<i>facit</i> , he makes.
<i>hostis</i> , -is, <i>m.</i> , enemy (<i>in war</i>).	<i>faciunt</i> , they make.
<i>ignis</i> , -is, <i>m.</i> , fire.	<i>libenter</i> , <i>adv.</i> , gladly.
<i>māter</i> , -tris, <i>f.</i> , mother.	<i>dē</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), about, of,
<i>labōrō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, toil,	from.
labor.	<i>cum</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), with.

79. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Miles gladiō hostem vulnerāvit.* 2. *Helvētīi nūntiōs dē iniūriis ad Caesarem mittunt.* 3. *Victor finem belli libenter facit.*¹ 4. *Caesar igne et gladiō finēs hosti-*

¹ Makes gladly, i.e. is glad to make.

um vāstāvit. 5. Agricolaē magnā cum diligentīā labōrā-
vērunt. 6. Nōne diligentiam discipulōrum libenter
laudāvistī?¹ 7. Militēs Caesaris magnam hostium caedem
faciunt. 8. Graeci carmina Homēri laudābant. 9. Multa
Galliae oppida occupābimus. 10. Cōsul dē Galliā fābu-
lam nārrat. 11. Serva ad mātrem multa dōna portat ā
dominā. 12. Clāmōribus magnīs oppidum militēs occu-
pāvērunt.

II. 1. The boys run to the woods with a great shout.
2. Were the men of Britain large? 3. The maiden
called her sister by name. 4. I have decked the head
of my mother with a garland of roses. 5. The poems of
Homer delighted the Greeks. 6. Mothers like to adorn²
their children. 7. The trees in my father's garden are
large. 8. You will wound your companion with your
sword. 9. The wounds of the soldier were many.
10. The boy labors diligently³ in the field every day.



CHAPTER XV.

Third Declension: Stems in i. — Continued.

*First Conjugation, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indica-
tive Active; Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative
of Sum; Ablative of Accompaniment.*

80.

PARADIGMS.

mare, n.,	animal, n.,
sea.	animal.
Stem mari-	animāl-

¹ See 3 and note 1. ² Compare 3 and 6, above. ³ I.e. with diligence.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>marium</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>animālium</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>mari</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animāli</i>	<i>animālibus</i>

Observe that the above nouns have *i* stems, and that the nominative is the same as the stem, except that the characteristic *i* has either been changed to *e*, as in *mare*, or dropped, as in *animal*.

81.

PARADIGMS.

Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
1.	<i>amāveram, I had loved.</i>	<i>amāverāmus, we had loved.</i>	
2.	<i>amāverās, you had loved.</i>	<i>amāverātis, you had loved.</i>	
3.	<i>amāverat, he had loved.</i>	<i>amāverant, they had loved.</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT.

1.	<i>amāverō, I shall have loved.</i>	<i>amāverimus, we shall have loved.</i>
2.	<i>amāveris, you will have loved.</i>	<i>amāveritis, you will have loved.</i>
3.	<i>amāverit, he will have loved.</i>	<i>amāverint, they will have loved.</i>

Indicative of Sum.

	SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
1.	<i>fueram, I had been.</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been.</i>	
2.	<i>fuerās, you had been.</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been.</i>	
3.	<i>fuerat, he had been.</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been.</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT.

1.	<i>fuerō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been.</i>
2.	<i>fueris, you will have been.</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been.</i>
3.	<i>fuerit, he will have been.</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been.</i>

82.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 2. Cēlāvī, culpāvī, vocāvī, labōrāvī. 3. Vocāverat, vāstāverat, parāverat. 4. Portāverō, vāstāverō, occupāverō. 5. Cēlāverāsne? parāverāsne? ōrnāverāsne? 6. Cēlāvistīne pecūniam? 7. Līberāverat obsidēs. 8. Frūmentum parāverātis. 9. Sorōrem culpāverat. 10. Puerōs laudāverit. 11. Iūdex militem līberāvit. 12. Gladium hostis occupāverat.

II. 1. They had wounded, he had prepared. 2. He will have loved, they will have blamed. 3. I labor, I was laboring, I will labor. 4. I have labored, I had labored, I shall have labored. 5. He calls, he was calling, he will call. 6. He has called, he had called, he will have called. 7. The soldier had carried a javelin. 8. We had called together the children. 9. The fire had seized the town. 10. The gift will have delighted the boy. 11. They were preparing to take the town.

83.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. ^{acc}Caesar in agrōs Titum cum equitibus mittit, *Cæsar sends Titus with cavalry into the country-districts.*
2. Galba cum patre in urbe labōrat, *Galba works with his father in the city.*

Observe that *equitibus* denotes the persons by whom Titus is accompanied, and *patre* the person by whom Galba is accompanied. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of accompaniment*.

84. RULE. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

In military phrases *cum* is often omitted; as, **Caesar multis legiōnibus in Galliam properat**, *Cæsar hastens into Gaul with many legions.*

85.

VOCABULARY.

animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte.flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.iter, itineris, *n.*, march, route.legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.mare, -is, *n.*, sea.vectigal, -gālis, *n.*, tax.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight.

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hurry.

86.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. In mari sunt animalia multa et magna. 2. Dederantne Helvetii Caesari vectigalia? 3. Caesar cum tertia legione ad oppidum Bibracte properavit. 4. Hostes magnis¹ itineribus a silvis ad flumen properaverunt. 5. Gladio et pilo, milites, cum Graecis pugnastis. 6. In carminibus Homerus fabulas de bello narravit. 7. Liberi cum matre in pulchro horto fuerant. 8. Pulchrae arbores multos homines delectant. 9. Consul cum multis militibus igni et gladio fines hostium vastaverat. 10. Magna fuerit caedes hostium.

II. 1. The poet had carried his poems to (his) sister. 2. Caesar makes a long march and takes the town Bibracte. 3. The soldiers had fought with the enemy, and had wounded many with (their) swords. 4. The boys were glad to labor (were gladly laboring) with (their) fathers in the fields. 5. The march to the river had been long. 6. The taxes of the Greeks will be small. 7. Have sailors always been glad to tell stories about the sea? 8. The legions hasten to the river with the cavalry, and put an end to the slaughter (make an end of the slaughter). 9. The soldiers fought in the river. 10. Caesar will have laid waste the fields of the enemy.

¹ *Forced marches.*

CHAPTER XVI.

Third Declension: Mixed Stems.¹*Ablative of Time.*

87.

PARADIGMS.

	nox, f., night.	urbs, f., city.	mōns, m., mountain.
Stem	noct-	urb-	mont-
SINGULAR.			
<i>N., V.</i>	nox	urbs	mōns
<i>G.</i>	noctis	urbis	montis
<i>D.</i>	nocti	urbi	monti
<i>Ac.</i>	noctem	urbem	montem
<i>Ab.</i>	nocte	urbe	monte
PLURAL.			
<i>N., V.</i>	noctēs	urbēs	montēs
<i>G.</i>	noctium	urbium	montium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	noctibus	urbibus	montibus
<i>Ac.</i>	noctēs -īs	urbēs -īs	montēs -īs

Which class of nouns do these resemble in the singular?
In the plural?

Like these words are declined: 1. Most nouns in *-ns* and *-as*; 2. Monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a consonant.

¹ These were originally consonant stems, as given above, but in the plural they are declined like *i* stems.

88.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vocābam, celābō, parāvī. 2. Portābis, dederās, occupāveris. 3. Properāsne ad flūmen? 4. Occupātisne, occupābātisne oppidum? 5. Pugnābantne, dēlectābitne? 6. Hominēs liberāvimus, laudāvimus. 7. Virgō rosīs sorōrem ōrnābat, ōrnāverat. 8. Ubi miles pīlum celābit, celābat? 9. Quid puer ad mātrem portāverit, portāvit? 10. Cum Gallis pugnāverit, pugnāverat.

II. 1. We were calling, we shall hurry. 2. What were you calling? 3. Did not the master blame the slaves? 4. He fought with a sword, will fight. 5. We shall fight with the Greeks, he will fight. 6. He loved (his) children, had loved. 7. He will have praised the poem, you were praising. 8. Fine (beautiful) trees adorn, were adorning the garden. 9. The Greeks had paid (*dō*), were paying taxes. 10. We will call, have called a council.

89.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hieme in urbe Mārcus labōrat**, *in the winter Marcus works in the city.*
2. **Legiō nocte oppidum occupāvit**, *the legion seized the town in the night.*
3. **Ūnā hōrā in urbe erō**, *within an hour I shall be in the city.*

Observe that *hieme* shows the time *when* Marcus works in the city, *nocte* the time *when* the town was seized, and *unā hōrā* the time *within which* I shall reach the city.

90. RULE. — *Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Time within which may also be expressed by *in* with the ablative.

91.

VOCABULARY.

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.annus, -i, *m.*, year.dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, commander.hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.nox, noctis, *f.*, night.pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.vigilia, -ae, *f.*, (part of the night) watch.

92.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux ex oppidō ad flūmen properāverat et cum hostibus pugnāverat. 2. Tertiā vigiliā noctis Bibracte occupābāmus. 3. Māter Galbae erit in urbe hieme, nōn aestāte. 4. Dē tertiā vigiliā legiōnēs ex oppidō properāvērunt. 5. Num animālia ignem amant? 6. Flūmina in mare currunt. 7. Tertiā hōrā Caesar magnam caedem hostium facit. 8. Tertiō annō bellī cōsulibus vectigālia dederātis. 9. Graeci libenter cum cōsule pācem faciunt. 10. Erant multae arborēs in montibus. 11. Milītēs tertiāe legiōnis gladiis et pilis pugnābant.

II. 1. The leader of the soldiers makes peace with the Helvetians. 2. The farmers labored cheerfully in the summer. 3. The wearied soldiers had hastened by forced marches into the territory of the enemy, and had taken the town in the third watch of the night. 4. Winter on the mountain had not been agreeable. 5. We had fought at night with the Roman legions. 6. The faithful mother has called her tired children into the garden. 7. The men hastened to the sea in the third watch. 8. Man is an animal. 9. Galba did not seize the beautiful town, but laid waste the fields of the enemy. 10. The soldiers are laying waste the fields with fire.

CHAPTER XVII.

Third Declension.

Rules for Gender.

Make a complete table of the nominative endings of nouns of the third declension.

93. Gender. 1. Nouns in *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, and *-ēs*, increasing in the genitive, are masculine, except those in *-dō*, *-gō*, and abstract and collective nouns in *-iō*.

2. Nouns in *-ās*, *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive, *-is*, *-ūs* (long), *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō* (abstract and collective), *-s* (following a consonant), *-x*, are feminine.

3. Nouns in *-a*, *-e*, *-ī*, *-y*, *-c*, *-l*, *-n*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, *-us* (short), are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, and the learner should notice each when he first meets it.

These rules are subordinate to the general rule for gender. See 7.

94.

VOCABULARY.

explōrātor, *-ōris*, *m.*, scout.
litus, *-oris*, *n.*, shore (of the sea).
mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, custom; *pl.*, manners, character.
ōrdō, *-inis*, *m.*, rank, row, order.

palūs, *-ūdis*, *f.*, marsh, swamp.
pēs, **peditis**, *m.* (*pēs*, foot), foot soldier.
dēliberō, *-āre*, *-ārī*, *-ātum*, consult, deliberate.
per (*prep. with acc.*), through.

95.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Liberōs et matrēs in palūde cēlāverant. 2. Caesar cum hostium duce dē pāce dēliberābat. 3. Hieme milītēs Caesaris saepe pugnābant. 4. Milītēs tertiāe legiōnis ad litus properāverant. 5. Nūntiī per hostium finēs in urbem currunt. 6. Dux dē tertiā vigiliā noctis ad montem explōrātōrēs mittit. 7. Magister discipulīs dē mōribus Graecōrum nārrābat. 8. Explōrātōr dē tertiā vigiliā per ōrdinēs peditum ad flūmen properāvit. 9. Peditēs tertiā hōrā montem occupāverant. 10. Nocte in monte multōs ignēs habent milītēs.

II. 1. The commander will consult with the consul about the war. 2. The boys run through the woods to the shore. 3. He often hurries into the city about nine o'clock.¹ 4. They send the scouts in the night to the territory of the enemy. 5. The third legion had often fought with the Helvetians in the summer. 6. In the third year of the war we laid waste many towns and cities. 7. They had carried grain into the marshes to (their) horses. 8. The taxes of the Helvetians were small. 9. The mother frequently praises the good manners of (her) children. 10. The commander censures a foot-soldier of the third rank.

96.

VOCABULARY.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, a cohort.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law.
pars, partis, *f.*, part.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time.

decem, numeral *adj.*, indecl.,
ten.
iuvō, -āre, iuvī, iūtum, assist.
stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, stand.

¹ As the Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise, about nine o'clock would be equivalent to about the third hour.

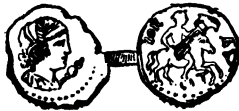
97.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar à litore ad urbem iter facit et militēs frumentō iuvat. 2. Sunt in legiōne decem cohortēs. 3. Puer in itinere comitem iūverat. 4. Servus per palūdem ad mare currit. 5. Arborum ōrdō in litore stābat. 6. Pācis temporibus bellum parāmus. 7. Dē iūre obsidum in conciliō delīberābimus. 8. Pater filiō librum dē Graecōrum mōribus dedit. 9. Cōsul cum parte peditum Britanniam occupābit. 10. Dux cum decem cohortibus Graecōs iuvābat.

II. 1. The scout was telling about the customs of the Helvetians. 2. The horses were standing at (in) the end of a marsh. 3. In the third watch the commander sends a scout to the mountain. 4. Boys, do you like to stand on the seashore in summer? 5. Night puts an end to the journey. 6. Caesar had aided the Helvetians with grain. 7. In the third year of the war the Greeks make peace with the Romans. 8. They will consult about the rights of the victors. 9. At the seashore, winter is not a pleasant season (time of year), is it? 10. We shall set free a part of the hostages at nine o'clock.¹

¹ See 95. II. 3.



GALLIC COIN.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

First Conjugation, Present Indicative Passive; Ablative of Agent.

98.

PARADIGMS.

acer, sharp.			celer, swift.		
Stem ācri-			celeri-		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i> ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
<i>G.</i> ācris	ācris	ācris	celeris	celeris	celeris
<i>D., Ab.</i> ācri	ācri	ācri	celeri	celeri	celeri
<i>Ac.</i> ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
<i>N., V.</i> ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
<i>G.</i> ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	celerium	celerium ¹	celerium
<i>D., Ab.</i> ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
<i>Ac.</i> ācres(-is)	ācrēs(-is)	ācria	celerēs(-is)	celerēs(-is)	celeria

1. These are called adjectives of three terminations, because in the nominative singular there is a different form for each gender.²

2. What change in the stem is seen in the nominative?

3. Decline together *mīles ācer, domina ācris, celer equus*.

99. Learn the conjugation of the present indicative passive of *amō* (p. 225). Make a table of terminations,

¹ *Celerum* is the usual genitive plural of *celer*.

² To this class belong only a few stems in *-ri*. These are all (except *celer*) declined like *ācer*

and commit them to memory. Like *amō* conjugate the present indicative passive of *vocō*, *laudō*, *dēlectō*, and *vulnerō*.

100. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rēgīna Iūliam amat*, the queen loves Julia.
2. *Iūlia ā rēgīnā amātur*, Julia is loved by the queen.
3. *Titus ab amīcō amātur*, Titus is loved by his friend.

Observe that the first and second sentences have the same meaning, but that the verb of the first is in the active voice, and the verb of the second in the passive.

Observe that the agent—that is, the person who does the act—is expressed in the first by the nominative case, and in the second by the ablative with *ā*, and in the third by the ablative with *ab*.

101. RULE.—*The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

102. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Vocāmur*, culpāmur. 2. *Vulnerātur ā milite*.
3. *Vulnerātur pilō*. 4. *Liberat servum*. 5. *Iuvantur ā patre*. 6. *Cīvēs ā cōnsule convocantur*. 7. *Ā sorōre laudātur*. 8. *Palūs arboribus cēlātur*. 9. *Frūmentum ex agrō ab agricolā portātur*. 10. *Saepe ā puerīs in hortum vocāris*.

II. 1. We are blamed, you are praised. 2. The mother adorns (her) daughter. 3. The girls are adorned by the mother. 4. The town is seized by the general. 5. The soldiers are wounded with stones. 6. The children are carried through the marsh. 7. The men are blamed by the judge. 8. We are assisted by (our) friends. 9. The fields are devastated by the conquerors. 10. The town is laid waste by fire.

103.

VOCABULARY.

celeritās, -ātis, f., quickness, swift-ness.

civis, -is, m. (like ignis), citizen.

imperātor, -ōris, m., commander-in-chief, general.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

lēgātus, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambas-sador.

nāvis, -is, f. (like ignis).
ship, vessel.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp,
active.

celer, celeris, celere, quick,
swift.

accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
accuse.

104.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Ācer cōsul malōs cīvēs accūsāt.* 2. *Lēgātus magnā celeritāte in finēs hostium iter facit et oppidum magnum occupat.* 3. *Frāter imperātōris ā cīvibus accūsātur.* 4. *Mātrēs liberōs rosīs pulchrīs ōrnant.* 5. *Urbs tertiā vigiliā noctis ā duce cohortium occupātur.* 6. *Nautae decem nāvibus celeribus frūmentum ad urbem portant.* 7. *Militēs, ab imperātōre laudāmur.* 8. *Lēgātus cum imperātōre dē iūre peditum dēliberāverat.* 9. *Vir ā comite gladiō vulnerātur.* 10. *Celerī nāvi ab imperātōris frātre in Britanniam portātur epistula.*

II. 1. A beautiful book is given to the pupil by the master. 2. A great part of the city is concealed by the mountain. 3. The lieutenants are summoned to a council by the commander-in-chief. 4. In the summer of the third year of the war, the general consulted with the citizens about peace. 5. Many large animals were standing on the shore of the sea. 6. The active foot-soldiers by forced marches hurry to the consul. 7. Swift ships are given to Caesar by (his) friends. 8. In time of war women often assisted the farmers in the fields. 9. The boys were standing in a row at the end of the marsh. 10. Soldiers, we will quickly (with quickness) prepare to fight.

CHAPTER XIX.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.¹

*First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Passive;
Ablative of Cause.*

105.

PARADIGM.

brevis, short. Stem brevi-

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	Feminine. Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine. Neuter.	
N., V.	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia	
G.	brevīs	brevīs	brevium	brevium	
D., Ab.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus	
Ac.	brevem	breve	brevēs (-is)	brevia	

106. Learn the conjugation of the imperfect indicative passive of *amō*. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

107.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Pater filium iuvābat. 2. Fīlius ā patre iuvābātur. 3. Princeps obsidēs liberāverat. 4. Ā Rōmānis urbs vāstābātur. 5. Accūsābāris ā cīvibus. 6. Gladiūs ab hostibus (it) pugnātur. 7. Lēgātī ab imperātōre accūsābantur. 8. Cēlābāmur in silvā ā duce. 9. Māter puerīs fābulās brevēs nārrābat. 10. Fābulae brevēs ā mātrem nārrābantur.

¹ This class includes all *i* stems, except those of three terminations, and also the comparatives.

II. 1. I was calling, thou wast called. 2. We were praising, you were praised. 3. You were blamed, he was praised. 4. We were being assisted by (our) friends. 5. We were preparing war. 6. I was assisted by (my) brother. 7. The sailors were hurrying to the sea with shouts. 8. The women and children were concealed in the swamps. 9. A part of the cohorts was concealed by a row of trees. 10. In the night the city was seized.

108. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCE.

1. *Agricola diligentia filii delectatur, the farmer is pleased with (his) son's diligence.*
2. *Militēs defessī itinere erant, the soldiers were weary with (on account of) their march.*

Observe that *diligentiā* shows the cause of the pleasing, and *itinere* the cause of the weariness, and that they are in the ablative case.

109. RULE. — *Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

110. VOCABULARY.

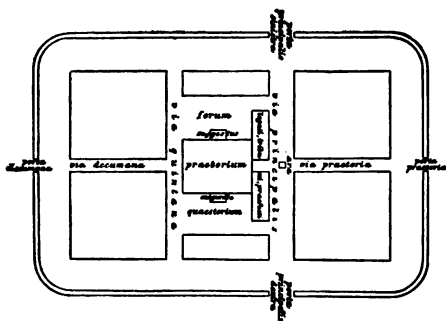
<i>castra, -ōrum, n., camp.</i>	<i>superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, surpass, defeat.</i>
<i>multitūdō, -inis, f., (multus), multitude, great number.</i>	<i>brevis, -e, short.</i>
<i>populus, -i, m., people.</i>	<i>fortis, -e, brave.</i>
<i>virtūs, -ūtis, f., (vir), bravery, virtue.</i>	<i>gravis, -e, heavy.</i>
	<i>omnis, -e, all.</i>
<i>dolet, he is pained; dolent, they are pained.</i>	

111. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Peditēs omnēs virtūte ab imperātore laudābantur.* 2. *Militēs tertiæ legionis vulneribus multis dolent.*

3. Multitūdō peditum fortium magnā cum celeritāte hostēs superābat. 4. Lapidēs gravēs ad urbem nāvibus portābantur. 5. Cīvēs ad castra properābant et cum imperātore dē iūre dēliberābant. 6. Imperātor mōre populi Rōmāni Helvētiīs iter nōn dat. 7. Brevi tempore Caesar Helvētiōs superāverat. 8. Dux iniūriīs Graecōrum ā populō Rōmānō accūsābatur. 9. Gravi vulnere ad castra ā servō lēgātus portātur. 10. Nautae ācrēs erant laeti celeribus nāvibus. ✓

(II. 1. The general was pleased with the swiftness of the messenger. 2. The cohorts were aided by a large number of brave cavalrymen. 3. The journey from a part of Gaul to Britain is short. 4. The lieutenant with all the cohorts hastened to the camp in the night. 5. Has a legion ten cohorts? 6. Water was carried by the women to the weary soldiers. 7. The judge is pained by the wrongs of (his) brother. 8. A part of the third legion had defeated the Helvetians near the river. 9. The soldiers were standing in the camp. 10. The camp of the enemy was seized through the valor of the third cohort.)



PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP.

CHAPTER XX.

Adjectives of One Termination.¹

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Passive; Ablative of Specification.

112.

PARADIGMS.

	vēlōx, swift.		potēns, powerful.	
	Stem vēlōc-		potent-	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	vēlōx	vēlōx	potēns	potēns
<i>G.</i>	vēlōcis	vēlōcis	potentis	potentis
<i>D.</i>	vēlōcī	vēlōcī	potenti	potenti
<i>Ac.</i>	vēlōcem	vēlōx	potentem	potēns
<i>Ab.</i>	vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcī (-e)	potenti (-e)	potenti (-e)
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
<i>N., V.</i>	vēlōcēs	vēlōcia	potentēs	potentia
<i>G.</i>	vēlōcium	vēlōcium	potentium	potentium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus	potentibus	potentibus
<i>Ac.</i>	vēlōcēs (-is)	vēlōcia	potentēs (-is)	potentia

1. What nouns do these adjectives resemble in their declension?

2. Why are they called adjectives of one termination?

3. Decline together *eques vēlōx, vēlōx equus, rēx potēns, rēgina potēns.*

113. Learn the conjugation of the future indicative passive of *amō*. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

¹ This class includes all consonant stems except the comparatives.

114. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Castra occupābantur, occupābuntur.* 2. *Vulnerābātis, vulnerābitis pilō.* 3. *Celeritās explorātōrem iuvat, iuvābit.* 4. *Explorātor celeritāte laudābātur, laudābitur.* 5. *Ab amicis iuvāmur, iuvābimur.* 6. *Celerēs nāvēs parantur, parābuntur, parābantur.* 7. *Cum celeritāte urbs occupābātur, occupābitur.* 8. *Accūsābitur, accusābātur ab ācri lēgātō.* 9. *Virtūs fortium virōrum saepe laudātur.* 10. *Celer nūntius nōn culpābātur, culpābitur.* 11. *Superābāmur, superābimur ā Rōmānis.*

II. 1. We shall assist, you will be assisted. 2. The citizen will be assisted by (his) brother. 3. The city was being seized, it will be seized by the general. 4. Soldiers, you will be praised for (your) valor. 5. In the summer we hurry, we shall hurry to the shore. 6. We were fighting, we shall fight with swords. 7. He is fighting, he was fighting with a foot-soldier. 8. You will be called to the city. 9. The citizens were being concealed, they will be concealed in the woods. 10. Where will the scout be concealed?

115. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rōmāni Helvētiōs virtūte superābant, the Romans surpassed the Helvetians in valor.*
2. *Nōmine fuit rēx, he was king in name.*

Observe that *virtūte* is used with *superābant* and defines its application; so also *nōmine* defines the application of *rēx*. The ablative thus used answers the question *in what respect*, and is called the *ablative of specification*.

116. RULE. — *The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application.*

117.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ars, artis, f., art.</i>	<i>altus, -a, -um, high, deep.</i>
<i>hūmānitās, -ātis, f., culture.</i>	<i>idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, proper.</i>
<i>nātūra, -ae, f., nature, character.</i>	<i>pār, paris, equal.</i>
<i>vis, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f., force;</i>	<i>potēns, -entis, powerful.</i>
<i>pl. virēs, virium, strength.</i>	<i>vēlōx, -ōcis, swift.</i>
	<i>que, conj., enclitic, and.</i>

118.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētīi ā populō Rōmānō virtūte hūmānitāteque superābantur. 2. Brevī tempore militēs ācrēs oppidum nōmine Bibracte occupant. 3. Imperātor et lēgātus sunt vīribus parēs. 4. Equī ducum vīribus celeritāteque fuērunt parēs. 5. Frāter arte, bonīs mōribus soror laudābitur. 6. Miles ā frātre hūmānitāte, nōn virtūte superābātur. 7. Iūdex ā cīvibus multīs et potentibus accūsābitur. 8. Caesar multitūdine vēlōcium nāvium rēgem iuvābit. 9. Artem ducis, militum virtūtem saepe laudāmus. 10. Litus est altum et aestāte ad castra nātūrā idōneum.

II. 1. The Romans were surpassed by the enemy in the large number of (their) men. 2. The mountain was not suitable by nature for a large town. 3. The brother of the active lieutenant was commander-in-chief in name. 4. The brave brothers are suffering on account of (their) wounds. 5. All the lieutenants will be summoned to a council in the third watch of the night. 6. The swift cavalry will hurry from the camp at the proper time. 7. The third legion will be praised for (its) swiftness and (its) valor. 8. The Greeks were surpassed by the Romans in the arts of war. 9. The valor and culture of the Greeks will be praised by all men. 10. The Romans were superior to (their) enemies in the quickness of their ships.)



ROMAN CITIZEN (TIBERIUS).

TO VILU
ABSOLUTE

CHAPTER XXI.

First Conjugation.

*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive,
Descriptive Ablative.*

119. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of *amō*.

1. These tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb *sum* with the perfect passive participle *amātus*, -a, -um. They are, therefore, called *compound tenses*.

2. It will be observed that the neuter of the participle *amātus*, -a, -um, is exactly like the supine given as one of the principal parts of the verb.

3. The participle *amātus*, -a, -um, is declined like *bonus*, -a, -um, and agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Like *amō* conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of *laudō*, *vocō*, *vulnerō*, and *liberō*.

120.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Servī liberātī sunt, liberātī erunt.* 2. *Cūstōs vulnerātus erat, vulnerātus est.* 3. *Cīvēs convocātī erunt, convocātī erant.* 4. *Castra rēgis vāstāta erant.* 5. *Vir-tūte ā populō laudātus es.* 6. *Nocte in silvā cēlātī sumus.* 7. *Dēlectāmur, dēlectābiminī urbe.* 8. *Celeritāte et vīribus nōn superābātur.* 9. *Rēgis patria ignī vāstāta est.* 10. *Ā potentibus cīvibus rēx accūsātus erat.* 11. *Vēlōx equus nūntiō parātus est.*

II. 1. He is called, he was blamed, he will be praised.
 2. He was called, he had been blamed, he will have been
 praised. 3. Titus was consul in name. 4. The commander-in-chief has been overcome. 5. The active horseman
 had been wounded. 6. We shall surpass the Greeks in
 culture. 7. The girls had been delighted with the poem.
 8. Gaul had been seized by the enemy. 9. The javelins
 have been carried to the town. 10. Did you carry the
 javelins to the town? 11. We had been defeated in
 Britain. 12. He was not surpassed in strength.
 13. The town has been taken by the lieutenant.
 14. They were set free by the general. 15. The
 field had been laid waste with fire. 16. They have
 consulted with the chief.

121. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Idlia est puella magnā diligentia, Julia is a girl of great diligence.*
2. *Caesar erat magnā virtute, Caesar was a (man) of great valor.*
3. *Puerōs bonis mōribus amō, I love boys of good character.*

Observe that *magnā diligentia* modifies *puella*, that *magnā virtute* modifies *Caesar*, and that *bonis mōribus* modifies *puerōs*. Observe, also, that these ablatives express a quality of the substantives which they modify. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of quality*, or the *descriptive ablative*.

The ablative alone cannot be used to express quality, but must have an adjective in agreement with it, or a limiting genitive.

122. RULE. — *The ablative with an adjective may be used to express quality.*

123.

VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, <i>m.</i> , youth.	incrēdibilis, -e, incredible.
Ariovistus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Ariovistus.	ingēns, -entis, huge, vast.
Germānus, -a, -um, German.	mūnitus, -a, -um, (<i>perf. part. of</i>
Germānus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , a German.	mūniō), fortified.
corpus, -oris, <i>n.</i> , body.	primus, -a, -um, (<i>sup. of prior</i>),
magnitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i> , size, magnitude.	first.
oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, attack, storm.	summus, -a, -um, (<i>sup. of superus</i>), very high, very great, top of.

124.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Germānī primā vigiliā castra nātūrā et arte mūnita oppugnāvērunt. 2. Germānī erant ingentī magnitudine corporum et incrēdibili virtūte. 3. Equitum multitudīne et celeritatē hostēs ā Rōmānīs superātī sunt. 4. Adulēscēntem summā hūmānitātē lēgātum in Britanniam mittit. 5. Oppidum summā vī oppugnātum est primā vigiliā. 6. Dux fortis incrēdibili celeritatē ad montem properāverat et castra tertiāe legiōnis oppugnāverat. 7. Urbs potēns bellō fuerat. 8. Corōna gravis data erat rēginae. 9. Puellae magnā diligentīā pater saepe dēlectātus est. 10. Imperātor idōneō tempore oppidum nātūrā mūnitum oppugnābit.

II. 1. All men have been pleased by the skill of the great poet Homer. 2. The general, (a man) of great culture, is pained by the wounds of his soldiers. 3. The poet was a man of great diligence and culture. 4. Men of great valor have been called into camp. 5. The Romans were surpassed by the Germans in stature (size of bodies). 6. The scouts hastened with incredible swiftness to a high mountain. 7. In a short time all the

citizens will have been called into the city. 8. The leaders of the cohorts are equal in stature and bravery. 9. The soldiers of Ariovistus, king of the Germans, wounded the cavalry of Cæsar with stones. 10. Suitable gifts have been given to all the good servants.)



CHAPTER XXII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Declension of Comparatives; Ablative with Comparatives.

125. Adjectives have in Latin as in English three degrees of comparison,—the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

Comparison may be regular or irregular.

126. REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārus (stem cāro-), <i>dear.</i>	cārīor, <i>dearer.</i>	cārissimus, <i>dearest.</i>
brevīs (stem brevī-), <i>short.</i>	brevīor, <i>shorter.</i>	brevissimus, <i>shortest.</i>
vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), <i>swift.</i>	vēlōcīor, <i>swifter.</i>	vēlōcissimus, <i>swiftest.</i>
potēns (stem potent-), <i>powerful.</i>	potentīor, <i>more powerful.</i>	potentissimus, <i>most powerful.</i>

Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem-vowel, if there is

one, and adding *-ior*, and the superlative likewise by adding *-issimus*.¹

Compare *altus*, *longus*, *lātus*, *laetus*, *grātus*, *perītus*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

Declension of Comparatives.

127.

PARADIGM.

cārior, dearer. Stem *cārior*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>cārior</i>		<i>cārius</i>	<i>cāriōrēs</i>	<i>cāriōra</i>	
<i>G.</i>	<i>cāriōris</i>		<i>cāriōris</i>	<i>cāriōrum</i>	<i>cāriōrum</i>	
<i>D.</i>	<i>cāriōri</i>		<i>cāriōri</i>	<i>cāriōribus</i>	<i>cāriōribus</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>cāriōrem</i>		<i>cārius</i>	<i>cāriōrēs (-is)</i>	<i>cāriōra</i>	
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>cāriōre or -i</i>		<i>cāriōre or -i</i>	<i>cāriōribus</i>	<i>cāriōribus</i>	

1. All comparatives are declined like *cārior*.
2. All superlatives are declined like *bonus*.
3. The comparative must sometimes be translated by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by *very*.

Bellum est longius, the war is rather long.

Bellum est longissimum, the war is very long.

128.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rēx est potentior quam cōsul, a king is more powerful than a consul.*
2. *Rēx est potentior cōsule, a king is more powerful than a consul.*

In what case is *cōsul*? Why?

¹ Some adjectives are not compared by adding terminations, but by using *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*; as, *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

Observe that the sentences have the same meaning, and that the ablative *cōsule* is used instead of *quam cōsul*.

129. RULE. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when quam (than) is omitted.*

This ablative can only be used instead of a nominative or accusative.

130.**VOCABULARY.**

altitūdō, -inis, f. (altus),
height, depth.

animus, -i, m., mind, spirit.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., Orgetorix.

nōbilitas, -e, of high birth, famous,
noble.

circumdō, -āre, -dēdī, -dātum,
(circum, around, and dō), to
put around, surround.

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
throw into confusion, disturb
greatly.

apud (prep. with acc.), among,
with, near.

āc (before consonants),
atque (before vowels and con-
sonants), and.
quam, adv., than.

131.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Rēgēs semper fuērunt potentiōrēs cīvibus.
2. Iter ad altum montem est brevissimum. 3. Apud
Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. 4. Imperātor for-
tior erat mīlite. 5. Flūmen est magnā altitūdine et ad
magnās nāvēs idōneum. 6. Oppidum nātūrā mūnitum
flūmine magnā altitūdine circumdatum est. 7. Ariovistus
et comes fuērunt parī magnitūdine corporum. 8. Adu-
lēscentēs animō perturbāti sunt ingentī magnitūdine
corporum et magnā virtūte Germānōrum. 9. Pācis artēs
grātiōrēs sunt belli artibus. 10. Imperātor fuit summā
virtūte atque hūmānitāte.

II. 1. Peace is more pleasant than war. 2. Seas are
deeper and wider than rivers. 3. The Romans, by the

shortest route, and with incredible swiftness, had hurried to the city and had surrounded (it) with soldiers. 4. Among the Germans, Ariovistus was the bravest and most powerful. 5. The violence (*vis*) of the enemy greatly disturbs the minds of the women and children. 6. The javelin of the Roman soldier was longer than his sword. 7. The lieutenant makes a very long journey in a severe (sharp) winter. 8. The cavalry are very swift and very brave. 9. The town was attacked by a youth of great valor. 10. The river is rather deep.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

Partitive Genitive.

132. Adjectives in *-er*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
1. miser (stem misero-), <i>wretched.</i>	miserior, -ius, <i>more wretched.</i>	miserrimus, -a, -um, <i>most wretched.</i>
2. celer (stem celeri-), <i>quick.</i>	celerior, -ius, <i>quicker.</i>	celerrimus, -a, -um, <i>quickest.</i>

Observe that the comparative of adjectives in *-er* is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding to the nominative singular masculine of the positive, *-rimus, -a, -um*.

Compare *liber, aëer, pulcher*.

133. Six adjectives in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem minus the stem-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, <i>difficult</i> .	difficillior.	difficillimus.
similis, <i>like</i> .	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
gracilis, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior.	gracillimus.
humilis, <i>low</i> .	humilior.	humillimus.

134. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Equitum fortissimī in Galliam properābunt, *the bravest of the cavalry will hurry into Gaul.*
2. Decem obsidum liberātī sunt, *ten of the hostages were set free.*
3. Multī militum vulnerātī erant, *many of the soldiers had been wounded.*

Observe that each word limited by the genitive in the examples denotes a part of the whole denoted by the genitive.

135. RULE. — *The partitive genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken.*

136. VOCABULARY.

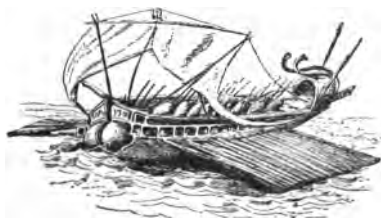
locus, -ī, <i>m.</i> (pl. loca, -ōrum, <i>n.</i>), place.	facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .
mūrus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , wall.	difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .
nihil, <i>n.</i> , <i>indeclinable</i> , nothing.	similis, -e, <i>like, similar</i> .
	dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .

137. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Carmina Homēri pulcherrima sunt omnium Graecōrum carminum. 2. Aestāte in Britannīā nox est brevissima. 3. Mōrēs frātris et sorōris sunt dissimillimī.

4. Pueri liber est facillimus, viri difficillimus. 5. Nihil est grātius quam multitudō amicōrum. 6. Frātrēs et sorōrēs sunt mōribus simillimī. ✓ 7. Dux Rōmānōrum, nōbilis adulēscēns, summā (*depth of*) hieme oppidum Germānōrum oppugnāvit. 8. Pars peditum in altissimō mūrō stat et in hostēs pīla ac lapidēs mittit. 9. Brevisimō tempore lēgātus locum altissimō mūrō circumdat. 10. Germānis fuit nihil hūmānitātis. 11. Adulēscēntem ingentī corporis magnitudīne et summā virtūte ad Caesarem mittit.

II. 1. Many books are very easy, many very difficult. 2. Among the Romans the most powerful were not always (men) of the noblest birth. 3. The horses of Britain are very swift. 4. The farmer's black horse is swifter than the white (one). 5. Ariovistus was wounded in the foot. 6. Around¹ the consul there were always young men of great culture and good character. 7. They attack on (*ex*) all sides² with loud (great) shouts and throw the ranks into confusion. 8. A part of the soldiers of Orgetorix were attacked in a place very strongly fortified³ by nature.

¹ apud.² pars.³ Superlative of mūnitus.

ROMAN SHIP.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Irregular Comparison.—Continued.*Ablative of Difference.*

138. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, outward.	exterior, <i>outer</i> or <i>more</i> outward.	extrēmus and extimus, outermost or last.
inferus, <i>low</i> .	inferior, <i>lower</i> .	infimus and imus, <i>lowest</i> .
posterus, following.	posterior, <i>later</i> .	postrēmus and postumus, last.
superus, upper.	superior, <i>higher</i> , superior.	suprēmus and summus, top of, highest.

These adjectives are used mainly in the comparative and superlative.

139. The following are irregular throughout:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, <i>good</i> .	melior, melius, <i>better</i> .	optimus, <i>best</i> .
malus, <i>bad</i> .	peior, peius, <i>worse</i> .	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
magnus, <i>great</i> .	maior, maius, <i>greater</i> .	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> .	—, plūs, ¹ <i>more</i> .	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .
multī, <i>many</i> .	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i> .	plūrimī, <i>most</i> .
parvus, <i>small</i> .	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i> .	minimus, <i>smallest</i> .
senex, <i>old</i> .	senior (maior nātī), older, elder.	maximus nātī, oldest, eldest.
iuvenis, <i>young</i> .	iūnior (minor nātī), younger.	minimus nātī, youngest.

¹ The neuter plūs, nom. and acc., and the gen. plūris, are the only forms used in the singular.

140. Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are apparently formed from adverbs or prepositions.

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō (prep., <i>before</i>).	prior, <i>former</i> .	primus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv., <i>near</i>).	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus, <i>nearest</i> .

141. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Pater capite maior est quam filius, *the father is a head taller (larger by a head) than the son.*
2. Titus decem annis senior est quam frater, *Titus is ten years older (older by ten years) than his brother.*
3. Arbor decem pedibus altior est quam murus, *the tree is ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

An ablative like *capite*, *annis*, or *pedibus*, with comparatives and words of comparison, showing how much one thing differs from another, is called an *ablative of difference*.

142. RULE. — *The degree of difference is denoted by the ablative.*

143. VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, -um, <i>m.</i> , the Allobroges.	superus, -a, -um, upper.
Genāva, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Geneva.	exterus, -a, -um, outward, outer.
Labiēnus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Labienus.	extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme.
lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i> , light.	propior, -ius, nearer.
nātū, <i>m.</i> (<i>abl. of nātus</i>), by birth.	proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.
maior nātū (greater by birth), older.	prior, -ius, former.
iuuēns, -e, young; <i>as a noun</i> , a young man.	senex, senis (<i>m. only</i>), old; <i>as a noun</i> , an old man.

144.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Iūlia multīs annīs iūnior quam frāter est. 2. Filii optimōrum patrum saepe pessimī sunt. 3. Malus est Orgetorix, peior frāter. 4. Labiēnus decem annīs est minor nātū Caesare. 5. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. 6. Sorōre Iūlia est pede altior. 7. Summus mōns primā lūce ā Labiēnō occupātus est. 8. Propior puerōrum Labiēni filius est. 9. Militēs ē locō superiōre in hostēs pīla mittunt. 10. Caesar priōre aestāte Bibracte oppugnāverat. 11. Virtūte atque hūmānitāte Titus apud Graecōs laudātus est. 12. Pāx melior est quam bellum.

II. 1. The manners of the girls are better than (those) of the boys. 2. Men very unlike are often friends. 3. Part of the soldiers were much disturbed in the night by a great shouting. 4. Orgetorix surrounded the place with a very high wall. 5. The poems of Homer are not very difficult. 6. The first part of the journey was very easy, (but) the last more difficult. 7. The mother and (her) daughter are very unlike. 8. Is the valor of the soldier more pleasing than the diligence of the farmer? 9. Nothing delights everybody (*omnēs*). 10. He was older than his brother, and more famous among the Helvetians.



COIN OF CAESAR.

CHAPTER XXV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

145.

ADJECTIVES.

ADVERBS.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. miser (stem misero-), <i>wretched</i> . | miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> . |
| cārus (stem cāro-), <i>dear</i> . | cārē, <i>dearly</i> . |

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension are formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding *ē*.¹

Form adverbs from *grātus*, *laetus*, *pulcher*.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 2. ācer (stem ācri-), <i>sharp</i> . | ācriter, <i>sharply</i> . |
| vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), <i>swift</i> . | vēlōciter, <i>swiftly</i> . |
| potēns (stem potent-), <i>powerful</i> . | potenter, <i>powerfully</i> . |

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding to the stem *-ter* or (consonant stem) *-iter*, but stems ending in *nt* drop *t* and add *-ter*.

3. Sometimes the neuter accusative and sometimes the ablative of the adjective is used as an adverb; as, *multum*, *much*; *facile*, *easily*; *primō*, *first*.

146.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

- | POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. cārē, <i>dearly</i> . | cārīus. | cārīssimē. |
| celeriter, <i>quickly</i> . | celerius. | celerrimē. |
| vēlōciter, <i>swiftly</i> . | vēlōcius. | vēlōcissimē. |

Observe that in the comparative the adverb is the same as the neuter of the adjective, and that the superlative of

¹ The adverbs from *bonus* and *malus* are formed irregularly, — *benē*, *malē*.

the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective regularly. See 145. 1.

✓

2. ADVERBS COMPARED IRREGULARLY.

benē (from bonus), <i>well</i> .	melius.	optimē.
malē (from malus), <i>ill</i> .	peius.	pessimē.
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs.	plūrimē.
parum, <i>little</i> .	minus.	minimē.
diū, <i>long</i> .	diūtius.	diūtissimē.

A more complete list will be found in larger books.

147. VOCABULARY.

Belgae, -ārum, <i>m.</i> , the Belgians.	prō, <i>prep. with the abl.</i> , before, in defence of, for.
causa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , reason, cause; <i>abl. sing.</i> , for the sake.	ācritēr, <i>adv.</i> , sharply.
fuga, -ae, <i>f.</i> , flight.	celeritēr, <i>adv.</i> , quickly.
Gallus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Gaul.	facile, <i>adv.</i> , easily.
proelium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , battle.	fortitēr, <i>adv.</i> , bravely.
ventus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , wind.	gravitēr, <i>adv.</i> , deeply.
	vēlocitēr, <i>adv.</i> , swiftly.

148. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ventī magnitudīne minus vēlocitēr currit nūntius. 2. Graviter hominēs ex malīs liberōrum mōribus dolent. 3. Locus altissimō mūrō mūnitus ab Allobrogibus facile occupātus est. 4. Labiēnus ex castrīs properāvit et primā lūce Genāvam occupāvit. 5. Proximō proeliō Helvētīi in omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuērunt. 6. Iuvenēs sunt similēs nōmine, sed mōribus dissimillimī. 7. Multīs dē causīs Belgae sunt omnium Gallōrum fortissimī. 8. Caesar celeritēr hostēs in fugam dat (*puts*). 9. Prō patriā omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnābunt. 10. Minor puerōrum celerius currit quam maior.

II. 1. The march was more difficult on account of a high (*magnus*) wind. 2. All the Gauls fought bravely for (their) native land. 3. All the higher places had been seized by the Belgians. 4. He will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory (pl.) of the Belgians. 5. The Romans used to have longer swords than the Germans. 6. The brothers were very unlike. 7. Julia is a year younger than (her) brother. 8. Mothers are glad to labor (gladly labor) for (their) children. 9. A horse runs more swiftly than a man. 10. Nothing easily threw Cæsar's legions into confusion.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Fourth or *u*-Declension.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

149.

PARADIGMS.

	<i>exercitus, m., army.</i>		<i>cornū, n., horn.</i>	
	Stem <i>exercitu-</i>		Stem <i>cornu-</i>	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>exercituum</i>	<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuūm</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>exercitui (ū)</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>exercitum</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>exercitū</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

1. The stems of the fourth declension end in *-u*.
2. To find the stem, drop *um* of the genitive plural.
3. Make a table of terminations for both nouns.
4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in *-us* are almost all masculine; in *-ū*, neuter.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

150. Learn the principal parts and present indicative active of *habeō* (p. 228).

1. How do the terminations of the present tense differ from those of *amō*?

2. What is the present stem? See 56. 1.

3. Verbs of the second conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ēre* of the present infinitive active.

151.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cornū, -ūs, n.,</i> horn, wing (of an army).	<i>habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,</i> have, hold, consider.
<i>exercitus, -ūs, m.,</i> army.	<i>moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum,</i> move.
<i>impetus, -ūs, m.,</i> attack, violence.	
<i>uxor, -ōris, f.,</i> wife.	<i>teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum,</i> hold.
<i>cotidianus, -a, -um,</i> daily.	<i>terreō, -ēre, -uī, territum,</i> frighten.
<i>dexter, -tra, -trum,</i> right.	
<i>doleō, -ēre, dolui, dolitūrus,</i> be pained, grieved.	<i>ferē, adv.,</i> almost.

152.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus exercitum in castris tenet, et hostium dux dextrum cornū celeriter in superiorem locum movet. 2. Dextrum Allobrogum cornū ab hostibus superabatur. 3. Britannia est fortissimorum virorum patria. 4. Gallorum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae et ferē cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis pugnant. 5. Primō impetū Labiēnus exercitum hostium in fugam dat. 6. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habet. 7. Genāva primā luce ā Caesare occupāta est. 8. Iuvenēs prō patriā fortiter pugnābunt. 9. Uxorem ex Helvētiis habet. 10. Properat in altiorem locum castra movēre. 11. Proximā nocte exercitum ex oppidō movet et primā luce dextrum Belgārum cornū ācritter oppugnat.

II. 1. High winds do not easily frighten the sailors. 2. The year before¹ the place had been surrounded by a high wall. 3. The flight of the cavalry very much² disturbs the mind of the commander-in-chief. 4. All the young men march swiftly in the night against the army of Labienus. 5. At daybreak they make a violent (sharp) attack upon the right wing. 6. The horsemen make almost daily attacks upon the army of Cæsar. 7. He quickly moves (his) camp from the territory of the Allobroges into the territory of the Helvetians. 8. The wrongs done to (wrongs of) the Roman people were the cause of the war. 9. The general is deeply pained by the flight of (his) army. 10. Labienus was ten years older than (his) wife. 11. The cavalry sharply attack a town in the most distant territories of the Gauls.



CHAPTER XXVII.

Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Dative with Adjectives.

153. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of *habēō*.

Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of *amō*, and observe that they differ only in the final vowel of the stem.

¹ See 144. I. 10.

² very much = greatly.

154. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella est cōra mātī,** *the girl is dear to her mother.*
2. **Helvētī proxīmī erant Germānī,** *the Helvetians were nearest to the Germans.*
3. **Oppidum est urbī simile,** *a town is like a city.*

Observe that in each of these sentences the dative is dependent upon an adjective, and shows to what the quality denoted by the adjective applies.

155. RULE. — *Many adjectives take a dative to define their application.*

These are chiefly adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, and their opposites.

156. VOCABULARY.

commēātus, -ūs, m., supplies.	potestās, -ātis, f., power.
cōpla, -ae, f., abundance; <i>in pl.,</i> (military) forces.	Vergilius, -i, m., Virgil.
manus, -ūs, f., hand, band.	novus, -a, -um, new.
memoria, -ae, f., memory.	sinister, -tra, -trum, left.
portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port.	videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see; <i>pass.,</i> seem.

157. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Omnia oppida Belgārum in Caesaris potestāte fuērunt. 2. Carmina Vergiliī, poētae Rōmānī, carminibus Homēriī, poētae Graeciī, similia sunt. 3. Locus castrīs nātūrā est idōneus. 4. Caesar novōs militēs in castrīs tenēbit. 5. Sinistrum exercitūs cornū ab hostibus supērātum est. 6. Puella dextrā manū librum, sinistrā rosam tenēbat. 7. Caesaris exercitui nihil fuit difficile. 8. Primā lūce multae nāvēs longae¹ in portū fuērunt. 9. Caesar iniuriās Helvētiōrum memoriā tenēbat.

¹ The Romans called ships of war *long ships*.

10. Dux in summō monte cōpiās hostium vidēbit.

11. Cōpia commēātūs ex Galliā celeriter portābatur.

✓ II. 1. The almost daily attacks of the Gauls frighten the recruits (new soldiers). 2. The sailor's wife was much disturbed by the violence of the wind. 3. The memory of wrongs is often the cause of war. 4. The leader will be greatly pained by the flight of (his) forces. 5. The general will easily procure supplies suitable for (his) army. 6. The Gauls fought bravely in defence of (their) native land. 7. He will quickly move (his) camp to a higher place. 8. The young man will see many ships in the harbors of Britain. 9. He has in the town a great abundance of grain. 10. At daybreak the Belgians violently attack (make an attack violently against) the left wing.



CHAPTER XXVIII.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

✓ 158. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active of *habēō*.

What is the perfect stem of *habēō*? See 74. 1.

159. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Orgetorix commēātum habēbat, habēbit. 2. Clāmōre equum terrēbit, terruit. 3. Labiēnum dextrā manū, sinistrā Titum tenēbat. ✓ 4. Liberōs et uxōrēs Germānōrum explōrātor vidēbit, viderat. 5. Castra minōra vidē-

mus, vīdimus. 6. Nihil iuvenēs terrēbit, terruit. 7. Ubi equitem celerem vīdistī, vīderās?

(II. 1. We have supplies in the town. 2. The legion had a camp on the top of the mountain. 3. You will have a supply of grain. 4. The high wind was frightening the girls. 5. Where did you see a camp? 6. Was Dumnorix in Cæsar's power? 7. They will see a large number of men.)

160.

VOCABULARY.

✓ agmen, -inis, <i>n.</i> , column, troops (in motion); novissimum āgmen, the rear; primum āgmen, the van.	contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, (cum and teneō), to hold together, restrain, hem in.
centuriō, -ōnis, <i>m.</i> , centurion.	pertineō, -ēre, -uī, (per and teneō), to hold through, extend.
Dumnorīx, -igis, <i>m.</i> , Dumnorix.	prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (prō and habeō), to hold off, hinder from, check.
occāsus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , a setting.	sustineō, -ēre, -uī, tentum (sub and teneō), to hold under, withstand, endure.
Rhēnus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , the Rhine.	
sōl, sōlis, <i>m.</i> , sun.	
inferus, -a, -um, low.	
propter, (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), on account of.	

161.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar omnēs cōpiās in castris continuit. 2. Dextrum cornū Belgārum impetūs exercitūs Rōmānī facile sustinuerat. 3. Occāsū sōlis ad concilium centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum convocātī sunt. 4. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinēbant. 5. Clāmor militum novissimum agmen Belgārum terruerat. 6. Iūdicis uxor sinistrā manū carmina Vergilī tenuit. 7. Propter magnitudinem ventī omnēs ferē nāvēs in portū tenuerāmus. 8. Vidi-

stine magnam cōpiam nāvium longārum in portū?
 9. Equitibus cōpiās Dumnorigis commeātū¹ prohibuimus.
 10. Imperātor ad locum castris nātūrā idōneum exercitum
 mōverit. 11. Habuistīne Dumnorigem in potestāte?
 12. Primum agmen ab hōrā tertiā ad sōlis occāsum
 impetūs hostium sustinuit.

II. 1. The right wing was lower than the left.
 2. Dumnorix was not pleasing to Cæsar. 3. He will
 hold in memory the wrongs of (his) country. 4. We
 hastened with almost all (our) forces to the river and
 checked the van of the enemy. 5. The Belgians fought (in)
 almost daily battles with the Germans. 6. He kept the
 legion in camp on account of the wounds of the centurions.
 7. Cæsar easily hindered the Helvetians from (their)
 journey. 8. There had been a very large supply of grain
 in the town. 9. We had seen a harbor suitable for war-
 vessels. 10. Boys, did the territory of the Belgians extend
 to the river Rhine?



CHAPTER XXIX.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive.

Fifth or e-Declension.

162. Learn the present indicative passive of *habēō*.

1. Compare the endings with the corresponding endings of *amō*.

2. Like *habēō* conjugate the present indicative passive of *terreō*, *moveō*, and *videō*.

¹ *Ablative of separation.* See 452.

163.

PARADIGM.

<i>diēs, day.</i>		<i>rēs, thing.</i>	
Stem <i>diē-</i>		Stem <i>rē-</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i> <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Ac.</i> <i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i> <i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

1. How are the stems of these nouns found?
2. Make a table of the terminations.
3. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension which have all the cases of both numbers. The others are wanting in the plural wholly or in part.
4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, which is usually masculine in the singular, always masculine in the plural.

164.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aciēs, -ēi, f.,</i> line of battle.	<i>posterus, -a, -um,</i> following, after.
<i>diēs, -ēi, m.,</i> day.	
<i>Divitiacus, -i, m.,</i> Divitiacus.	<i>expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> take by storm.
<i>fidēs, -ei, f.,</i> confidence.	<i>incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> urge on, arouse, incite.
<i>rēs, -ei, f.,</i> thing, affair.	
<i>pauci, -ae, -a,</i> few.	<i>valeō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus,</i> be strong.
<i>pedester, -tris, -tre,</i> of infantry, on foot.	

165.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Posterō diē exercitus in castris à Caesare continētur.* 2. *Divitiacō¹ Caesar maximam fidem habēbat.*

¹ Dative.

3. Vergilius optimus poëtarum Rōmānōrum habētur. 4. Impetus hostium ā tertiā aciē sustinētur. 5. Multae rēs populum Rōmānum ad bellum incitābant. 6. Rōmāni pedestribus cōpiis plūrimum valēbant. 7. Oppidum et¹ nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus expūgnātum est. 8. Memoria priōrum proeliōrum centuriōnēs dēlectābat.) 9. Helvētiī flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō continentur. 10. Occāsū sōlis ā cīvibus in summō monte novissimum āgmen vidētur. 11. Commētūs² causā in finēs Allobrogum exercitus properāvit. 12. Peditēs ex inferiōre locō pīla in cōpiās hostium mittunt.

II. 1. A harbor suitable for war-vessels is seen by the scout. 2. The infantry are kept from the territories of the Belgians by an attack of the cavalry. 3. Slaves are in the power of (their) masters. 4. Is the pupil's book held in the left hand? 5. We soldiers are kept in camp on account of (our) wounds. 6. In the next summer the Gauls were aroused to war by a few chiefs. 7. The territory of the Belgians extends to the river Rhine. 8. A day is longer in summer than in winter. 9. Not all things are difficult. 10. The king is strong in the great number of (his) cavalry. 11. The line of battle was very long. 12. The town had been taken by storm in the first part of³ the summer. 13. I have the greatest confidence in (my) father.⁴

¹ Et . . . et, both . . . and.

² The ablative causā, for the sake of, is used with the genitive, which regularly precedes it.

³ For first part of use primus agreeing with the word for summer.

⁴ See I. 2, note.

CHAPTER XXX.

Second Conjugation : Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive.

Nine Irregular Adjectives.

166. Learn the imperfect and future indicative passive of *habeō*.

Like *habeō* conjugate the imperfect and future indicative passive of *moveō*, *teneō*, and *videō*.

167. The following adjectives, regular in the plural, end in *-us* in the genitive singular, and in *-i* in the dative singular.

<i>alius, other.</i>	<i>tōtus, whole.</i>	<i>alter, the other (of two).</i>
<i>nūllus, no, none.</i>	<i>ūllus, any.</i>	<i>neuter, neither (of two).</i>
<i>sōlus, alone.</i>	<i>ūnus, one.</i>	<i>ūter, which (of two).</i>

168.

PARADIGMS.

<i>alius, other.</i>			<i>ūnus, one.</i>		
Stem <i>allo-, alla-</i>			Stem <i>ūno-, ūna-</i>		
SINGULAR.					
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>
<i>Ac.</i> <i>aliūm</i>	<i>aliām</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Ab.</i> <i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>

Alius has *d*, not *m*, in the neuter nominative and accusative singular. For *alius* (gen.) *alterius* is usual.

✓ 169.

VOCABULARY.

civitas, -ātis, *f.*, state.Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura (mountains).lātitudō, -inis, *f.*, (lātus), width.Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone.

allus, -a, -ud, other.

alter, -era, -erum, other (of two).

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, to fear.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides.

170.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continēbantur; unā ex parte, flūmine Rhodanō lātissimō; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā altissimō. 2. Divitiacus sōlus ex omnī civitate Germānis liberōs obsidēs nōn dedit. 3. Propter magnitudinem silvārum et lātitudinem flūminum iter timēbat. 4. Multae rēs Orgetorigem ad aliud proelium incitābant. 5. Paucis diēbus oppidum ab hostibus tenēbitur. 6. Alii aliā rē¹ valent. 7. Centuriōnēs sōli posterō diē in concilium ā Caesare convocāti sunt. 8. Pedestria itinera ā nautis habēbantur difficillima. 9. Acies Rōmāna ā flūmine ad infimum² montem pertinēbat. 10. Facile erit commeātū hostēs prohibēre. 11. Imperātor centuriōnibus³ māximam fidem habēbat. 12. Tōtum āgmen unō tempore vidēbitur.

II. 1. On account of the height of the wall, he did not take the town by storm. 2. The attacks of the enemy were bravely endured by the whole line. 3. The cavalry make a violent (*acer*) attack on the Roman column. 4. He has great confidence in the whole army.³ 5. Some centurions were wounded on one day, others on another.) 6. The camp will be moved to a higher place

¹ Others in another thing; i.e. Some in one thing, others in another.² Lowest, lowest part of, base of.³ See 165. I. 2.

in a few days. 7. In one hand he held a book, in the other a stone. 8. Cæsar with the third legion alone will storm the town. 9. The town is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains. 10. A place is being prepared for another band of Germans. 11. The whole state feared the name of Ariovistus.

171.

READING LESSON.

NOTE.—In the reading lessons, all words not previously given in the special vocabularies are translated in parentheses. This does not apply to numerals, which must be sought in Chapters XXXII. and XXXIII.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 1-4.].

Galliae omnis sunt partēs trēs. Ūnus partis Belgae sunt incolae, alterius Aquitānī (*Aquitanians*), tertiæ Celtæ (*Celts*). Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs vocābant. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī erant Belgae. Belgae saepe cum Germānīs pūgnābant. Belgae et Helvētīi proximī erant Germānīs. Helvētīi ferē cottidiānis proeliis cum Germānīs pūgnābant. Belgae continēbantur marī, Rhēnō flūmine, Mātronā (*Marne*) et Sēquanā (*Seine*) flūminibus. Galli finibus Belgārum, Rhēnō et Rhodanō flūminibus, Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, marī continēbantur. Aquitānī ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs (*Pyrenees*) montēs et mare pertinēbant. Apud Helvētīōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Helvētīi undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. In aliam partem Galliae iter facere (*to make*) parābant. Orgetorigem lēgātum ad aliōs Gallōs misērunt (*they sent*). In itinere Casticum (*Casticus*, a man's name) Sēquanum (*a Sequanian*) et Dumnorīgem Aeduū (*an Aeduan*) amīcōs facit. Dumnorīgī filiam dat uxōrem | Orgetorigī¹

¹ See 48 and 49.

in animō erat rēgnū (royal power) occupāre in Helvētiis. Casticus et Dumnorix Orgetorigem iuvābant. ✓ Rēs Helvētiis narrāta est et Orgetorix accūsātus est. Servōs et amīcōs convocāvit. Per amīcōs et servōs liberātus est, sed paucis diēbus post (afterward) mortuus est (he died.)



CHAPTER XXXI.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.

172. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of *habēō*.

For explanation in regard to these tenses, see **119. 1, 2, and 3.**

173. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

Time: 15 min.
I. 1. Corpore ac animō centuriō valēbat. 2. Titus corpore plūs valet quam animō. 3. Posterō diē castra moventur, movēbuntur. 4. Castra celeriter mōta sunt, mōta erant. 5. Pauçī equitum ab explōrātōre vīsī sunt, vīsī erant. 6. Obsidēs in potestāte Caesaris tenēbantur, tenēbuntur. 7. Aliī hostēs, aliī longitūdinem itineris timēbant, timuerant. 8. Ā cūstōde vidēberis, vīsus erās. 9. Flūminibus continēbimur, continēmur. 10. Legiōnēs in castrīs continēbantur, contentae sunt.

II. 1. The line of battle was extending, it will extend to the foot of (*infimus*) the mountain. 2. The attack had been sustained, it will be sustained. 3. Dumnorix alone

will be kept, he has been kept in Cæsar's power. 4. You had been seen, you have been seen by the soldier's wife. 5. We shall be seen, we shall have been seen in the city in a few days. 6. The judge is feared, he will be feared by the bad only. 7. The cavalry had been kept from the Rhone. 8. The state was incited, it will be incited to war by the slaughter of the citizens. 9. The town had been taken by storm the year before. 10. We will attack, we were attacking the left wing.

174.

VOCABULARY.

auctōritās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , influence, authority.	duo , two.
Bellovacī , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Bel-lovacī.	noster , -tra, -trum, our.
Casticus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Casticus.	obtineō , -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold.
prōvincia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , province.	compleō , -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill, cover.
rēgnum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , kingdom, royal power.	inter (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), between, among.
Sēquanus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Sequanian.	omniū , <i>adv.</i> , altogether, in all.

175.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētiīs erant omnīnō itinera duo; ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum per prōvinciam nostram. 2. Rēgnum in cīvitāte Sēquanōrum ā Casticī patre obtentum est. 3. Tōtus mōns ā Caesare complētus est hominibus. 4. Orgetorigis auctōritās inter Helvētiōs nōn parva erat. 5. Pedestrēs cōpiās sōlās Sēquani timēbant. 6. Aliī in aliam partem equōs incitābant. 7. Plūrimum inter Belgās Bellovacōrum auctōritās et¹ virtūte et hominum multitudīne valēbat. 8. Cae-

¹ Et . . . et, both . . . and.

sar tertiæ legiōis mīlitibus summam fidem habēbat.
 9. Rhodanus flūmen est inter finēs Helvētiōrum et
 Allobrogum. 10. Posterō diē nostra aciēs superiōrem
 locum obtinuit.

II. 1. The young man had few friends, the old man
 many. 2. Our soldiers quickly took the town by storm.
 3. Orgetorix did not seize the royal power in the Helve-
 tian state. 4. The whole camp had been filled with the
 enemy. 5. There was only one legion in Gaul. 6. The
 sons will be praised by (their) fathers for (their) diligence.
 7. Have you seen many large rivers? 8. Cæsar had con-
 fidence in the third legion only. 9. The town was
 bounded on one side by a stream of great width, on the
 other by a high mountain. 10. The judge is a man of
 great influence among our citizens.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Cardinal Numbers; Accusative of Extent.

176. Learn from the vocabulary the principal parts
 of dūcō. What is the present stem? See 56. 1.

Verbs of the third conjugation may be recognized by
 the ending -ere of the present infinitive active.

177. Learn the present indicative active of dūcō
 (p. 231).

Notice that the stem-vowel *ē* is lost before *-ō*, becomes *ū* before *-nt*, and *ī* before other endings.

178.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum</i>	30. <i>trīgintā</i>
2. <i>duo, duae, duo</i>	40. <i>quadrāgintā</i>
3. <i>trēs, tria</i>	50. <i>quīnquāgintā</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	60. <i>sexāgintā</i>
5. <i>quīque</i> ✓	70. <i>septuāgintā</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	80. <i>octōgintā</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	90. <i>nōnāgintā</i> ✓
8. <i>octō</i>	100. <i>centum</i> ✓
9. <i>novem</i>	101. <i>centum ūnus or centum et ūnus</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	102. <i>centum duo or centum et duo</i>
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	200. <i>ducentī, -ae, -a</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	300. <i>trecentī, -ae, -a</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	400. <i>quadrīgentī, -ae, -a</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	500. <i>quīngentī, -ae, -a</i>
15. <i>quīndecim</i>	600. <i>sēscentī, -ae, -a</i>
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	700. <i>septīngentī, -ae, -a</i>
17. <i>septendecim</i>	800. <i>octīngentī, -ae, -a</i>
18. <i>duodēvigintī</i> -(<i>octōdecim</i>)	900. <i>nōngentī, -ae, -a</i>
19. <i>ūndēvigintī</i> (<i>novendecim</i>)	1000. <i>mille</i>
20. <i>vigintī</i>	2000. <i>duo milia</i>
21. <i>vigintī ūnus or ūnus et vigintī</i>	10,000. <i>decem milia</i>
22. <i>vigintī duo or duo et vigintī</i>	100,000. <i>centum milia</i>
28. <i>duodētrīgintā</i>	
29. <i>ūndētrīgintā</i>	

179.

DECLENSION OF CARDINALS.

Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* inclusive, and *milia*, the plural of *mille*. For the declension of *ūnus* see 168.

Duo and trēs are thus declined :—

180.

PARADIGMS.

duo, two.			trēs, three.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Ab. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

1. The hundreds, ducentī to nōngentī, are declined like the plural of bonus.

2. In the singular mille is generally an adjective, but the plural milia is always a noun of the neuter gender, declined like the neuter plural of trēs, and is followed by the partitive genitive; as, mille militēs, a thousand soldiers; but tria milia militum, three thousand soldiers (three thousands of soldiers).

181.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Caesar paucōs diēs in oppidō exercitum continēbat,
Caesar kept his army in the town for a few days.
2. Legiōnēs multōs annōs in Galliā fuerant, the legions had
been many years in Gaul.
3. Flūmen est pedēs trēs altum, the river is three feet deep.
4. Puer sēscentōs passūs currit, the boy runs six hundred paces.

Observe that diēs and annōs denote duration of time, and are in the accusative case. They answer the question, *How long?* Observe, also, that pedēs and passūs denote extent of space, and are in the accusative. They answer the question, *How far?*

182. RULE. — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

183.**VOCABULARY.**

longitūdō, -inis, f., length.

passus, -ūs, m., a pace.

quot, indeclinable adj., how many.

trēs, tria, three.

quattuor, four.

quinque, five.

sex, six.

vigintī, twenty.

quadrāgintā, forty.

sexāgintā, sixty.

octōgintā, eighty.

centum, one hundred.

ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.

trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred.

mille, one thousand.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum,
run.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, do ;
bellum gerere, carry on war.

mittō, -ere, misi, missum,
send.

V 184.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Mēnsa erat trēs pedēs longa, et duōs pedēs lāta.
2. Finēs Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem mīlia passuum
centum et octōgintā pertinēbant. 3. Belgae cum Germā-
nīs multōs annōs bellum gerunt.¹ 4. Nostri² multās
hōrās cum hostibus pugnābant. 5. Quot diēs habet
annus? Trecentōs et sexāgintā quīque. 6. Ē prō-
vinciā in finēs Allobrogum quīque legiōnēs lēgātus mit-
tit. 7. Quot equitēs erant in castris? Equitum mīlia
erant omnīnō sex. 8. Labiēnus tōtum diem iter facit,
et occāsū sōlis oppidum mīlia passuum sex ā Belgis occu-
pat. 9. Arbor in hortō sexāgintā pedēs alta est. 10. Di-
vitiacus nostrā memoriā rēgnum magnae partis Galliae
obtinuit. 11. Lēgātus cum sōlā primā legiōne prōvinciam
obtinēbit.

¹ English, *have been*, etc.

² See 51, foot-note.

II. 1. The forest is six miles long and four miles wide. 2. There were in the two armies forty-five thousand men. 3. How many hours were there in a day among the Romans? Twelve. 4. One seized the royal power in one state, another in another. 5. The route between the river Rhone and the Jura mountains was difficult. 6. The influence of Dumnorix among the Helvetians was greater than (that) of Divitiacus. 7. Cæsar held one mountain, the enemy the other. 8. The towns of the Sequanians were filled with our men. 9. How many miles does the city extend? 10. The army marches forty miles in two days.)

185.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 5-9.]

✓
The May
Helvētiis in animō erat per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere (*to make*). Frūmentum et multās aliās rēs in itinere portāre parābant. Duo omnīnō itinera erant: ūnum difficile, per Sēquanōrum finēs, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō facilius. Allobrogēs ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum erat proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Caesar summā celeritatē ad Genāvam legiōnem dūcit. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. ✕ Caesar Helvētiis iter per prōvinciam nōn dat, sed legiōne aliisque militibus ad montem Iūram milia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim dūcit (*extends*), et Helvētiōs itinere prohibet. Helvētiī alterā viā (*road*) per Sēquanōs iter facere volēbant (*wished*) sed Sēquanī iter nōn dabant. Ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum lēgātōs mittunt Helvētiī.

Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum valēbat auctōritāte et Helvētiis propter uxōrem amicus erat. Sēquani Dumnorigis auctoritāte mōtī (*moved*) Helvētiis per finēs iter dant.



CHAPTER XXXIII.

Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Ordinal Numerals.

186. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of *dūcō*.

Observe that the endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the first and second conjugations, while those of the future are different.

Write a table of future endings for the third conjugation, active voice, and commit to memory.

187. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. <i>prīmus</i>	11th. <i>ūndecimus</i>
2d. <i>secundus</i>	12th. <i>duōdecimus</i>
3d. <i>tertius</i>	13th. <i>tertius decimus</i>
4th. <i>quārtus</i>	14th. <i>quārtus decimus</i>
5th. <i>quīntus</i>	15th. <i>quīntus decimus</i>
6th. <i>sextus</i>	16th. <i>sextus decimus</i>
7th. <i>septimus</i>	17th. <i>septimus decimus</i>
8th. <i>octāvus</i>	18th. <i>duodēvicēsīmus</i>
9th. <i>nōnus</i>	19th. <i>ūndēvicēsīmus</i>
10th. <i>decimus</i>	20th. <i>vicēsīmus</i>

21st. vicēsimus primus or ūnus	60th. sexāgēsīmus
et vicēsīmus	70th. septuāgēsīmus
28th. duodētricēsīmus	80th. octōgēsīmus
29th. ūndētricēsīmus	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
30th. tricēsīmus	100th. centēsīmus
40th. quadrāgēsīmus	200th. ducentēsīmus
50th. quinquāgēsīmus	1000th. millēsīmus

Ordinal numerals are declined like bonus.

188.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , arrival, approach, coming.	legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, gather, read.
Hannibal, -alis, <i>m.</i> , Hannibal.	scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write.
Italia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Italy.	quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.
manipulus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , a manipule.	quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.
certus, -a, -um, certain.	sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul.	decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead.	vicēsīmus, -a, -um, twentieth.

189.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Puerī sextum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbant.
2. Uxōrem dē adventū filiārum trium certiōrem¹ facit.
3. Vicēsīmus aciēī mīles pilō vulnerātus est.
4. Duābus hōrīs decem mīlia passuum nūntius curret.
5. Ā prōvinciā in finēs Belgārum vīgintī diēbus exercitum dūcit.
6. Quīntō bellī annō urbs ā Rōmānīs expugnāta est.
7. Cohors decima pars legiōnis Rōmānae, manipulus tertia pars cohortis erat.
8. Peditum mīlia sex et equitum mīlia quattuor in proeliō pugnāvērunt.
9. Scribētisne, puerī, epistulās ad patrēs? Scribēmus.
10. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam dūcit et multīs proeliīs

¹ Certiōrem facit, makes more certain, i.e. informs.

Rōmānōs superat. 11. Vigilia apud Rōmānōs quārta pars noctis erat. 12. Ducentōs quadrāgintā quattuor annōs rēgēs Rōmānōrum rēgnum obtinēbant. 13. In portū erant trecentae octōgintā nāvēs.

II. 1. We shall write many letters from the city to (our) friends. 2. A friend of the Roman people had for many years held the royal power among the Sequanians. 3. How many legions were (there) in our province? 4. (There) were in all in the state of the Belgians three legions and four cohorts. 5. We were reading about the arrival of Hannibal in Gaul. 6. The town was filled with cavalry and foot-soldiers. 7. Through the influence of Orgetorix, the Gauls were carrying on war with the Germans. 8. Our state extends in length two hundred miles, and in breadth one hundred. 9. On the fifth day at sunset he takes the town by storm. 10. On the fourteenth day the general will lead from Italy six cohorts of the second legion.



CHAPTER XXXIV.

Third Conjugation : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

190. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses of the indicative active of *dūcō*. Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of *amō* and *habēō*.

191.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Multōs annōs Hannibal cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat, gesserat. 2. Quot epistulās ūnō annō scribis, scripsisti? 3. Quattuor librōs dē Bellō Gallicō legēmus, lēgimus. 4. Equōs sexāgintā in castra mittēmus, mīsimus. 5. Centuriō manipulum dūcēbat, dūxerat. 6. Nūntius ūnō diē vīginti milia passuum curret, cucurrit. 7. Peditēs pīla celeriter mittent, mīserint. 8. Nautae frūmentō nāvēs complent, complēvērunt. 9. Rēgnum in Sēquanīs ā Rōmānōrum amīcō obtinēbitur, obtinēbātur. 10. In prōvinciam cōpiās lēgātus dūcet, dūcēbat, dūxit.

II. 1. Our pupils have read, they will read many good books. 2. I have written to (my) father, I shall write. 3. Three hundred men were wounded, they had been wounded in the first battle. 4. How many books did you write, how many had you written? 5. The soldier will send many presents to (his) son, he has sent many. 6. I will lead the horse to the general. 7. On the fifth day the general was wounded, on the sixth the camp was stormed. 8. The boys will run, they were running very swiftly. 9. I will send (my) children to Italy, I have sent (them). 10. The ships will be filled, they had been filled with men.

Personal Pronouns.

192.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. egō, I.

nōs, we.

G. mei, of me.

nostrum or nostrī, of us.

D. mīhī (mī), to, for me.

nōbis, to, for us.

SINGULAR.

Ac. *mē*, *me*.Ab. *mē*, *from, by, with, etc., me*.

PLURAL.

nōs, *us*.nōbis, *from, by, with, etc., us*.

SECOND PERSON.

N., V. *tū*, (*thou*) *you*.vōs, *you*.G. *tui*, of (*thee*) *you*.vestrum or vestri, of *you*.D. *tibi*, to, for (*thee*) *you*.vōbis, to, for *you*.Ac. *tē*, (*thee*) *you*.vōs, *you*.Ab. *tē*, *from, by, with, etc.,*
(*thee*) *you*.vōbis, *from, by, with, etc., you*.

THIRD PERSON.

Reflexive.

N. ———

G. *sui*, of *him(self), her(self),*
it(self).*sui*, of *them(selves)*.D. *sibi*, to, for *him(self), etc.**sibi*, to, for *them(selves)*.Ac. *sē, sēsē, him(self), etc.**sē, sēsē, them(selves)*.Ab. *sē, sēsē, from, by, with,*
etc., him(self).*sē, sēsē, from, by, with, etc.,*
them(selves).

1. The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the sentence; as, *Iūlia sē culpat*, *Julia blames herself*. The place of the reflexive of the first and second person is supplied by the personal pronouns *ego, tū, nōs, vōs*; as, *Ego mē culpō*, *I blame myself*; *tū tē culpās*, *you blame yourself*.

2. The forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used chiefly as partitive genitives. See 135.

3. There are in Latin no special forms for the personal pronouns *he, she, it, and they*. For the substitutes see 208. 1.

4. When used with personal and reflexive pronouns, the preposition *cum* is enclitic (see 4. 7); as, *mēcum, sēcum, vōbiscum*. So also with relative pronouns; as, *quōcum, quācum, quibuscum*.

193.

VOCABULARY.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero.
tempestās, -ātis, f., storm, tempest, weather.
ego, I.
tū, thou.
sui, of himself, herself, itself.
iam, adv., now, already.

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable, adverse; **adversae rēs,** adversity.
secundus, -a, -um, favorable.
secundae rēs, prosperity.
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do, act.

194.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego tertiā diēi hōrā epistulam scribēbam, tū carmina Homēri legēbās. 2. Iulia sē semper laudat, sed mē semper culpāt. 3. Quot annōs habet Cornēlia? Quīnque annōs habet. 4. Lēgerat quattuor dē Bellō Gallicō librōs. 5. Silva sex milia passuum in lātitudinem pertinet. 6. Nōmina multōrum poētārum sunt cāra nōbīs. 7. Adversa tempestās in litus nōs ēgerat. 8. Nūntius dē fugā Hannibalis fuit certus. 9. Multae nāvēs longae propter tempestātem in nostrum portum cucurrerant. 10. In rēbus secundis omnēs amicōs habent. 11. Tibi dabō duōs pulcherrimōs librōs. Quid tū mihi dabis? 12. Pauci nostrōrum¹ impetum equitum sustinuērunt. 13. Ducem vōbiscum milia passuum decem mittēmus. 14. Hannibal iam multās Italiae civitatēs expugnāverat. 15. Rēs adversae saepe fortium animōs terrent.

II. 1. The garden extends two hundred feet in length and one hundred in breadth. 2. He leads two maniples of the second cohort to the top of the mountain. 3. How many books do you read in a year? 4. You will read with me the first book of the Gallic War. 5. I shall read

¹ Our (men).

a good book, but you will write a letter to (your) mother. 6. He informs ¹ me of the arrival of (my) father. 7. There was a river between the Romans and the camp of Hannibal. 8. On the fourteenth day we saw a wide river, and on the twentieth a very high mountain. 9. I am the fifth, you are the sixth. 10. Nothing is dearer to me than (my) country. 11. The tempest will drive many ships into the harbor.

195.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 10-12.]

Helvētiis in animō erat per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum (*the Santōnes*) finēs facere. Santonēs proximī erant prōvinciae Rōmānae. Caesar ex Italiā quinque legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit. In itinere cum montium incolis pugnābat. Caesaris adventū Helvētiī iam per Sēquanōrum finēs in Aeduōrum agrōs cōpiās dūxerant et Aeduōrum agrōs vāstābant. Aeduī et aliī Rōmānōrum amīci ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Caesar Aeduōs iuvāre et Helvētiōs superāre voluit (*wished*). Flūmen est Arar (*the Saône*) quod (*which*) per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit (*flows*). Helvētiī trēs iam partēs cōpiārum trāns (*across*) Ararim flūmen dūxerant, quārtam ferē partem nōn trādūxerant (*had led across*). Omnis cīvitātis Helvētiōrum quattuor partēs erant. Caesar in quārtam Helvētiōrum partem impetum facit. Multī occīsī sunt (*were killed*); reliquī (*the rest*) fugae sē mandāvērunt (*gave up*).

¹ Cf. 189. I. 2.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect
Passive.*Possessive Pronouns.*

196. Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of *dūcō*.

197. From the personal pronouns are formed the possessive pronouns.

meus, -a, -um, *my*.

tuus, -a, -um, *thy*.

noster, -tra, -trum, *our*.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your*.

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, their*.

1. These are adjectives in construction and they are declined as regular adjectives of the first and second declension, except that the vocative singular masculine of *meus* is usually *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

2. *Suus*, like the personal pronoun from which it is formed, is reflexive.

3. Possession is denoted by the possessive pronouns, not by the genitive of the personal pronouns. *Puer suam matrem amat*, *the boy loves his mother*.

198.

VOCABULARY.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank.

vicus, -ī, *m.*, village.

meus, -a, -um, *my*.

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your*.

noster, -tra, -trum, *our*.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your*.

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their*.

dīvidō, -ere, *dīvīsī*, *dīvīsūm*,

divide, separate.

expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

wait for, expect.

incolō, -ere, -colui, *live in, in-*

habit (with acc.).

ante (prep. with acc.), *before*.

199.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs novī in cohortēs dīviduntur.¹ 2. Explōrātōr dē omnibus rēbus Caesarem cottīdiē certiōrem facit. 3. Ante adventum vestrum, amīcī, quīntum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbam. 4. Rēbus in adversis paucī, in secundis multī hominibus amīcī sunt. 5. Primam lūcem in ripā flūminis exspectābam. 6. Ūnam partem Galliae incolunt Belgae, aliam Galli. 7. Tē et amīcum tuum in vicō exspectābit. 8. Duōs nūntiōs ad Hannibalem iam mīserat. 9. Epistula tua, mī fili,² multum mē dēlectāvit. 10. Summam suōrum³ virtūtem Caesar laudat. 11. Cicerō ad amīcōs multās epistulās scripsit. 12. Bellum cum multis cīvitātibus ab Hannibale gerēbātur. 13. Nāvis nostra in portum tempestāte agēbātur.

II. 1. The Allobroges used to live near the Roman province. 2. Your⁴ letter, brother, was very welcome to me. 3. A watch was the fourth part of a night. 4. The messenger informs Orgetorix of the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul. 5. The boy sees himself in the water. 6. The tenth legion was being led through our province. 7. We were reading with pleasure the poems of Virgil. 8. He was writing a letter to his sister before my arrival. 9. Our forces were being quickly led into the territory of the Sequanians. 10. I have few books; you have many. 11. We shall often be reading the fourth, fifth, and sixth hours of the day. 12. Our field is being divided by a wall into two parts.

¹ *Are being divided.*

² Vocative.

³ The possessive pronouns are used frequently agreeing with an omitted noun. Cf. 194. I. 12.

⁴ From this point the possessive pronouns in the English exercises will not be in parenthesis. They need not be expressed in Latin unless emphatic or unless the sense would be doubtful without them.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

**Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect,
and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.**

200. Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of *dūcō*.

Observe that the last three tenses do not differ in form from the same tenses of the first and second conjugations.

201. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Dividitur, divisum est.* 2. *Scribunt, scribebant.*
3. *Mittitur, mittetur, mittuntur.* 4. *Agitur, agebatur.*
5. *Legunt, legent, legerunt.* 6. *Urbs in sex partes dividetur.* 7. *Carmina scribentur.* 8. *Ab amico epistula missa est.* 9. *Navis in litus acta est.* 10. *In ripa Rhodani vos expectabamus.* 11. *Liber ab omnibus legetur.* 12. *Milia passuum duo cucurrimus.* 13. *In viis pueri visi sunt.* 14. *Paucis diebus in urbem mittentur.* 15. *Totum diem in castris contenti eramus.*

II. 1. We shall be separated, we have been separated.
2. It will be driven, it was being driven. 3. We were standing, we had stood. 4. They will be led, they were being led. 5. We shall be kept, they were kept. 6. They had been separated by a wall. 7. We will wait for your coming. 8. The ship was driven from the shore by the storm. 9. The field will be divided into two parts. 10. The poem has been read by my sister. 11. The troops will be led into Gaul. 12. We shall stand on the bank of the river.

202.

VOCABULARY.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, (dē + dūcō, lead from,) lead away, withdraw (<i>with dir.</i> <i>obj.</i>).	pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de- mand.
discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, withdraw (= go away).	hīberna, -ōrum, <i>n.</i> , winter quar- labor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , labor. [ters.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, remain. [seek.	mulier, -eris, <i>f.</i> , woman.
petō, -ere, -ivī or -ī, -itum, ask,	regiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , district, region.
	salūs, -ūtis, <i>f.</i> , safety.
	mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe.
	mātūrē, <i>adv.</i> , early.

203.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. 2. Apud Rōmānōs diēs in duodecim hōrās, nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvisā erat. 3. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hīberna exercitum dēdūxit. 4. Ante hiemem exercitus noster in hīberna dēductus erit. 5. Paucōs diēs amīcī meī in urbe manēbunt. 6. Diēs nōbis ad labōrem datur. 7. Paucī hostiūm fugā salūtem sibi petiērunt. 8. Lēgātus exercitum in aliam regiōnem dēdūxerat. 9. Vīgintī diēbus ante¹ frūmentum in meō agrō nōn fuit mātūrum. 10. Bonus cīvis suā salūte patriam cāriōrem habēbit. 11. Cōpiāe primā lūce ā ripā Rhodanī discēssērunt. 12. Gravissimum labōrem propter liberōs suōs saepe sustinent mulierēs. 13. Libērōs obsidēs ā Gallis pōstulāvit Ariovistus.

II. 1. Our city is divided into ten wards (*regiō*). 2. Our affairs are dear to us, yours to you. 3. Your prosperity will always delight me. 4. A swift messenger had been sent by the shortest route to the winter quarters of Labienus. 5. Storms kept us in the village.

¹ *Before by twenty days; twenty days ago. Ante is an adverb here.*

many days. 6. My son often asks me for money.¹ 7. Did Germans use to live on the island of Britain? 8. I had already waited for you two hours. 9. We remained in port on account of the violence of the storm. 10. The ship was driven swiftly through the water. 11. You were friendly² to us in adversity. 12. The young man had withdrawn from the army on account of a wound.

204.

READING LESSON.

[*CÆSAR, Gallic War, Book I. 13-15.*]

Ūnam partem Helvētiōrum Caesar iam superāverat. Cōpiās suās celeriter trāns (*across*) Ararim (acc. of *Arar*) dūxit contrā (*against*) aliās trēs partēs. Helvētiī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Prīnceps lēgātōrum, Divicō (*Divico*, a man's name), cum Caesare ēgit (*treated*, i.e. *talked*): "Pācem petimus ā tē. Sī (*if*) pācem faciēs (*will make*), ibimus (*will go*) in eam (*that*) partem atque ibi (*there*) erimus ubi nōs cōstitueris (*settle*, fut. perf. of *cōstituō*); sīn (*but. if*) bellum nōbiscum gerēs, tē superābimus, et locus ubi sumus ex calamitāte (*the misfortune*) populī Rōmānī nōmen habēbit." Caesar respondit (*replied*): "Sī (*if*) obsidēs mihi dabitis et sī Aeduīs et Allobrogibus satisfaciētis (*give satisfaction*), pāx erit." Divicō respondit, "Helvētiī obsidēs nōn dabunt," et discēssit. Posterō diē Helvētiī castra movent. Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pugnant et superantur. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat et hostēs ā populātiōnibus (*devastations*) prohibēbat. Diēs quīdecim iter fēcērunt (perf. of *faciō*).

¹ For the case of the thing asked for, and the person from whom it is asked with *petere*, see I. 1, above.

² I.e. friends.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

205.

PARADIGMS.

			SINGULAR.		
			hic, <i>this</i> .	ille, <i>that</i> .	
N.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa illud
G.	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius illius
D.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi illi
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam illud
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā illō
PLURAL.					
N.	hi	hae	haec	illi	illae illa
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum illōrum
D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis illis
Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās illa
Ab.	hīs	hīs	his	illis	illis illis

1. **Hic** refers to that which is near the speaker and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: *hic puer, this boy*.

2. **Iste**, *that (of yours)*, is declined like *ille*. It is applied to that which is near or has some connection with the person addressed, and so is called the *demonstrative of the second person*: *iste puer, that boy of yours*.

3. **Ille** is applied to what is more remote, and so is called the *demonstrative of the third person*: *ille puer, that boy*.

4. When *hic* and *ille* are contrasted, *hic* usually means the *latter*, and *ille* the *former*.

Ille agreeing with a noun frequently means *well-known*.

206.

VOCABULARY.

Aedui , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Aeduans.	ille , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> , that.
initium , -ī, <i>n.</i> , beginning.	iste , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i> , that (of yours).
nēmō , -inīs, <i>m.</i> , nobody.	clārus , -a, -um, famous.
ōrātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , speech, oration.	militāris , -e, military.
signum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , standard, sign.	dicō , -ere, <i>dixi</i> , <i>dictum</i> , say.
hic , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i> , this.	cūr , <i>adv.</i> , why?

207.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego et amīcī meī hōc vicō dēlectāmur. 2. Hic paucōs diēs in urbe manēbit, ille in lītus properābit. 3. Iste liber est pulcherrimus. 4. Vergilius et Caesar clārī Rōmānī fuērunt; ille poēta, hic perītus rei¹ militāris fuit. 5. Aquilae erant signa militāria legiōnum Rōmānārum. 6. Hannibal cum cōpiīs suīs ex illā regiōne iam discēsserat. 7. Nēmō libentius tē videt quam ego. 8. Initiō ōrātiōnis multa dē virtūte cīvium nostrōrum Cicerō dixit. 9. Agricola ante lūcem initium labōris saepe facit. 10. Cūr lēgātus mātūrius² in hīberna cōpiās suās dēdūxit? 11. Nēmō omnium cīvium nostrōrum clārior est illō virō.

II. 1. These children asked their father for a new book. 2. This boy is two years younger than that (one). 3. The winter quarters of our two legions were separated by a marsh. 4. We were waiting for you in the village all day. 5. Men used to live in villages for the sake of safety. 6. The Helvetians demanded the noblest of the Æduans as hostages. 7. The bank of the river was covered (filled) with large trees. 8. Why had the

¹ Perītus and many other adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.

² See 127. 3.

forces of Labienus been led away to their winter quarters unusually¹ early that year? 9. The grain in your fields will be ripe in a few days. 10. We saw the eagle of the tenth legion among the military standards. 11. Those boys of yours say many things about themselves. 12. These women do not ask the enemy for peace.



CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Demonstrative Pronouns. — *Continued.*

208.

PARADIGMS.

is, this, that.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>N. is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (ī)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>	
<i>G. eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	
<i>D. ei</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	
<i>Ac. eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>	
<i>Ab. eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	

idem, same.

<i>N. idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>(īdem)</i> <i>caedem</i> <i>eadem</i>		
<i>G. eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D. eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>		
<i>Ac. eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Ab. eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>		

¹ Compare I. 10, above.

ipse, self.					
SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

1. Is is sometimes used as the personal pronoun of the third person, and then means *he, she, it*.

2. Ipse, the intensive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood with which it agrees as an adjective. The reflexive pronoun *sē, self*, is always used substantively. The following sentences will illustrate the use of the two.

1. Miles *sē* laudat, *the soldier praises himself*.
2. Miles ipse laudatus est, *the soldier himself was praised*.
3. Ipse manebō, *I myself will remain*.
4. Mulier-epistulam ipsam legit, *the woman reads the letter itself, or, the very letter*.

209.

VOCABULARY.

committō, -ere, -misi, -misum,	idem, eadem, idem, same.
(con and mittō), entrust;	ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self.
committere proelium, en-	is, ea, id, that, this.
gage in battle.	barbarus, -i, m., barbarian.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendi, -fensum,	diū, adv., long, a long time.
protect, defend.	tam, adv., so.
domus, -ūs, f., house, home.	

210.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt, pācemque ab eō petunt. 2. Centuriō salutem suam explōrātōribus

Gallōrum commisit. 3. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movēnt, idem Caesar facit. 4. Cūr Cicerō ipse suās orātiōnēs tam saepe laudāvit? 5. Titum et frātreē eius obsidēs dux Helvētiōrum pōstulāverat. 6. Nōne tū ipse et frāter tuus in urbe mēcum paucōs diēs manēbitis? 7. Caesar et Labiēnus in eundem locum properāverant et unō tempore proelium cum Belgīs commiserant. 8. Lēgātus ipse peritissimus rei militāris habitus est. 9. Rōmānī ab iniuriā barbarōrum patriam diū dēfendērunt. 10. Hī barbarī ab impetū hostium domōs suās ācritē dēfendent. 11. Mihi mea domus, tibi tua est cāra. 12. Initium huius librī est facilius quam extrēma pars.

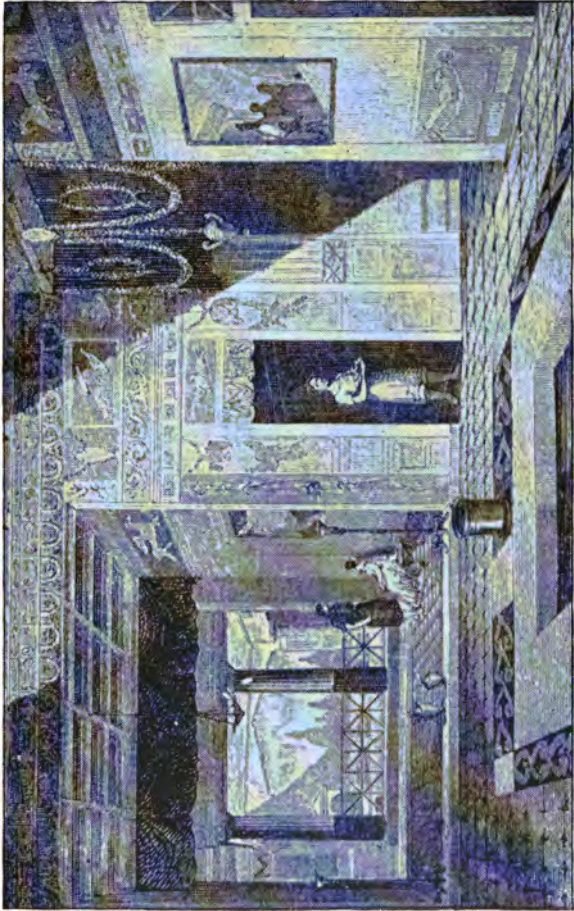
II. 1. The Belgians and the Helvetians did not live in the same part of Gaul. 2. That speech of yours was pleasing to many citizens. 3. The army will be led away from the winter quarters in a few days. 4. We saw that man in the city. 5. Cicero had great influence in those regions. 6. No one of this legion withdrew from the standards. 7. Why do you remain so long in this city? 8. These boys will assist their father in his daily toil. 9. The general himself and many of his men (soldiers) were wounded. 10. We had expected the ambassador and his son a long time. 11. Many famous men have lived in this city. 12. Why do you say these things to me?

211.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, I. 16, 17.]

Caesaris cōpiae frūmentum nōn habēbant. Aeduī id nōn dabant, nam (*for*) propter tempus annī frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant. Aeduī cottidiē dicēbant "frūmentum dabimus," sed nōn dabant. Propter hoc irātus



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE AT POMPEII.

TO THE
AIRBORNE

(*being angry*) Caesar principēs eōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. Liscus (*a man's name*), princeps Aeduōrum, Caesarī dixit: "Civium Aeduōrum nōnnūlli (*some*) auctoritate plūs valent quam ipsī principēs. Hi malā orātiōne multitudinem dēterrent (*deter*) nē (*that not*) frumentum dent (*give*, subjunctive of *dō*).¹ Hi dicunt: 'sī (*if*) Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs² et omnibus Gallis² libertātem (*liberty*) ēripiēt (*will take away*).' Ab eīsdem vestra cōnsilia (*plans*) hostibus ēnūntiantur (*are reported*). Hās rēs magnō cum periculō (*danger*) tibi ēnūntiō, et ob (*on account of, for*) eam causam diū tacuī (*kept silent*)."

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Relative Pronoun.

212. Learn the present indicative active of *audiō* (p. 234).

213.

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>quī, who, which.</i>					
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

¹ nē . . . dent, *that they give not*, i.e. *from giving*.

² Dative, but translate *from*.

214.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Ego qui haec scripsi homo sum, I who wrote this am a man.*
2. *Urbs quam vidēs magna est, the city which you see is large.*
3. *Pueri quōs vidētis discipuli mei sunt, the boys whom you see are my pupils.*

Observe that the relative has the same gender, number, and person as the word (called the antecedent) to which it refers, but that its case is determined by its relation to the other words of the clause in which it stands. *Qui* in the first sentence, while it has no separate form to show its person, is nevertheless of the first person, and so the verb which agrees with it is in the first person.

215. RULE. — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.*

216.

VOCABULARY.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice.

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.

audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hear.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, spend the winter.

mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, fortify.

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, come.

quī, quae, quod, who, which.

quam, adv., as; tam . . . quam, so . . . as.

217.

EXERCISES.

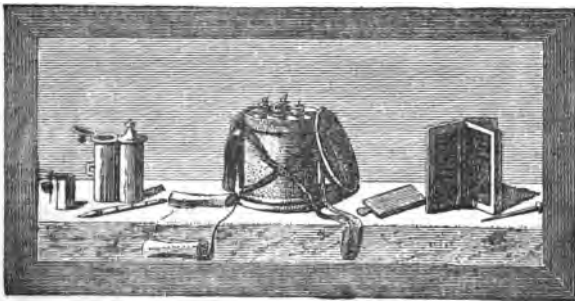
I. 1. *Nōn is bonus est qui sē ipse laudat, sed is quem optimi hominēs laudant.* 2. *Dux, qui hiemāverat in Italiā, primā aetate in Britanniam vēnit.* 3. *Locum ubi hiemābit exercitus noster mūnimus.* 4. *Libenter vōcem mei amīci Mārci semper audiō.* 5. *Helvētiī eō tempore quō Caesar in Galliam vēnit ad flūmen Rhēnum incolēbant.*

6. Nēmō rei militāris peritior quam Hannibal fuit. 7. Domus amicōrum quibuscum¹ hiemō multīs pictūris ōrnātur. 8. Ea pars Galliae quam Belgae obtinent ā finibus Gallōrum ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinet. 9. Quī ā multīs timētur, ipse multōs timēbit. 10. Nōne audīs ea quae dīcō? 11. Initium itineris nōn est tam difficile quam reliqua pars.

- ✓ II. 1. The same things are not easy for all men. 2. Many barbarians used to live in this region where we are. 3. I shall read with pleasure the orations which you gave me. 4. Those soldiers of yours always engage in battle bravely. 5. Cicero in the oration which I am reading, praises himself. 6. These barbarians are very skilful in the art of war. 7. The Roman legions used to defend their standards with the utmost valor. 8. The beginning of the book which I gave you is easy. 9. Dumnorix and his cavalry begin² the battle. 10. Shall you remain long in Greece? 11. The winter quarters which the legion is fortifying are in the territory of the Sequanians.

¹ See 192. 4, at the end.

² Make a beginning of.



WRITING MATERIALS.

CHAPTER XL.

**Fourth Conjugation : Imperfect, Future, Perfect,
Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect
Indicative Active.**

Interrogative Pronoun.

218. Learn the imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of the indicative active of *audī*.

Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of *dūcō*.

In what tenses is there a difference? In what does the difference consist?

219. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Audit, audiēbat, audiet.* 2. *Vēnit, vēnerat, vēnerit.* 3. *Audīvī, audīveram, audiverō.* 4. *Mūnit, mūniet, mūnivit.* 5. *Barbarus in Italiam vēnit.* 6. *Vōcemne audīs?* 7. *Lēgātus mūrō hiberna mūniet.* 8. *Eadem audivērunt.* 9. *Quō diē veniētis?* 10. *Quid dīcis, dicēs, dixisti?*

II. 1. You hear, you were hearing. 2. They will fortify, they have fortified. 3. We were coming, we had come. 4. He will protect, he has protected. 5. Whose voice do you hear? 6. The soldiers will fortify this place. 7. They will come to the city. 8. Whose speech did they hear? 9. We will defend our home. 10. They are coming from the winter quarters.

*Interrogative Pronoun.***220.****PARADIGM.***quis, who ? which ? what ?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i> quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

When the interrogative is used as an adjective, it usually has the same form as the relative.

221.**VOCABULARY.**

genus, -eris, <i>n.</i> , kind, sort.	appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call.
mercātor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , merchant.	considō, -ere, -sēdi, -sēssum, take a position, encamp.
numerus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , number.	dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, (dis and mittō), send away, dismiss.
senātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , senate.	
quis, quae, quid, who, what.	
pūblicus, -a, -um, public.	

222.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Mille cīvēs vōcem cōsulis audiēbant. 2. Quid ex tuō frātre dē adventū Germānōrum audivisti? 3. In Graeciā et in Italiā urbēs multae et nōbilēs sunt. 4. Caesar tertiāe legiōnī salutem suam commisit. 5. Quibus ex regiōnibus ei mercātōrēs vērunt? 6. Quae arborum genera in publicis hortis vidisti? 7. Nūntiī ā senātū in multās regiōnēs dimissi sunt. 8. Homines qui Belgae appellābantur, ūnam Galliae partem incolēbant. 9. Cum tribus legiōnibus et magnō equitum numero proelium commisit. 10. Ubi hostium cōpiae consēderunt? 11. Cas-

ticus, cuius pater amicus populi Rōmānī fuerat, rēgnū in suā cīvitātē occupābat. 12. Ego in Graeciā reliquā hiemis partem manēbō.

II. 1. Who of you will read Cicero's orations? 2. The same storm which kept us in port drove many ships upon the shore. 3. We will come into the city by the shortest route. 4. Marcus will be glad to hear the voice of his friend. 5. That little girl whose voice you hear is very unhappy. 6. In what district do they live? 7. What towns have the enemy fortified? 8. The Gauls were called barbarians by the Romans. 9. The home of that merchant is on the bank of the Rhine. 10. The province had for a long time been protected by the tenth legion. 11. Cæsar himself wrote a letter to Cicero.

223.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 18.]

Hanc ōrātiōnem dē Dumnorīge, Divitiaci frātre, Liscus habuerat. Caesar celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet (*retains*). Quærit (*he asks about*) ex eō sōlō ea quæ in conciliō dīxerat. Eadem ab aliīs quærit. Vēra (*true*) erant. Dumnorix ipse summā erat audāciā (*boldness*), magnā apud plebem (*the common people*) auctōritāte, Rōmānīs nōn amicus. Multōs annōs omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia redempta (*brought up*) habēbat. Magnum numerum equitum semper circum (*about, around*) sē habēbat et apud aliās cīvitātēs magnam auctōritātem habēbat. Māter eius uxor erat hominis in Biturigibus (*the Bituriges*, a Gallic tribe) nōbilissimī; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēbat. Ob (*on account of*) eam rem Helvētiīs amicus erat.

In proeliō equestri (*cavalry*, adj.) quod paucis diēbus ante factum erat (*had been made*, i.e. *fought*) initium fugae ā Dumnorīge et eius equitibus factum erat. Eōrum fugā reliquī equitēs territī erant.



CHAPTER XLI.

Fourth Conjugation : Passive Voice.

Indefinite Pronouns.

224. Learn the indicative passive of **audiō**. Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of **dūcō**, and observe the differences.

225. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vōx cōsulis in senātū audīta est, audiētur, audiēbātur. 2. Cuius vōx audītur, audīta erat, audīta erit? 3. Quā ex urbe venīs, veniēbās, vēnerās? 4. Illud oppidum mūnītur, mūniētur, mūnītum est. 5. Cicerōnis orātiōnem audiēmus, audīvimus, audīverāmus. 6. Vōcēs multōrum audītae sunt, audiēbantur, audientur. 7. Cūr veniunt, veniēbant, vēnerunt? 8. Eadem in senātū dicta sunt.

II. 1. In what city do we live, shall we live, have we lived? 2. We have come to this city, shall come, were coming. 3. The winter quarters will be fortified, were being fortified, have been fortified. 4. What did you

hear, whom did you hear? 5. What was heard, who was heard? 6. What place is being fortified, has been fortified? 7. In what place will the army spend the winter? 8. The shouts of the children will be heard.

226.**INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.**

The following are the more important indefinite pronouns:—

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| 1. Substantive | aliquis, aliquae | aliquid, | } <i>somebody, some one, something.</i> |
| | | (aliqua), | |
| | quis, quae | quid, | |
| | | (qua), | |
| Adjective | aliqui, aliqua | (aliquae), | } <i>some, any.</i> |
| | qui, qua | (quae), | |
| | | quod, | |
2. **quisquam**, — **quidquam** (no plural), *any one*.
 3. **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (**quoddam**), *a, a certain*.
 4. **quisque**, **quaque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), *each, every*.
 5. **ūllus**, **ūlla**, **ūllum**, *any*.

These pronouns, except **ūllus**, are declined like the interrogative or the relative. Where there are two forms, the one like the interrogative is used as a noun, the one like the relative as an adjective, but this distinction is not always observed, except in the neuter. The neuter plural of **aliqui** is generally **aliqua**, of **qui** indefinite **quae** or **qua**. In the declension of **quidam**, *m* becomes *n* before *d*, as, **quendam**, **quōrundam**.

The indefinite **quis** and **qui** are used chiefly after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, and will be introduced later in connection with these particles.

Quisquam is used chiefly in negative sentences, and in sentences (chiefly interrogative) implying a negative.

227.

VOCABULARY.

captivus, -ī, *m.*, captive.
colloquium, -ī, *n.*, conference.
aliquis, -quae (-qua), -quid,
 some, somebody, something.
quidam, quaedam, quiddam
 (quoddam), a certain.
quis, qua (quae), quid, some,
 somebody, something.
quisque, quaeque, quidque,
 every, every one.

quisquam . . . **quidquam**,
 some, somebody, something.
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum
 (dē and legō), pick from,
 select, choose.
reperiō, -īre, **repperī**, **reper-**
tum, find out.
neque, *conj.*, and not.
neque . . . **neque**, neither
 . . . nor.

228.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eadem dē Dumnorige quisque apud mē dīxit.
 2. Quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis nocte ad Caesarem vēnit. 3. Locum aliquem colloquiō idoneum dēligent. 4. Primum quisque itineris locum petēbat. 5. Ex captivō quōdam proximū iter in oppidum repertum est. 6. Cūr quisquam illōs barbarōs timet? 7. Quāque hīeme amīcī quīdam patris mei in urbem veniēbant. 8. Quī vestrum rosās in hortīs publicīs vidērunt? 9. Vōx magistrī ā quōque nostrum audīta est. 10. Locus quem dux dēlēgit paucīs diēbus mūniētur. 11. In prōvinciam mīsit equitēs, sed reliquum exercitum in hiberna dūxit. 12. Multa arborum genera sunt in eā silvā.

II. 1. Some friends of mine are spending the winter in Greece and Italy. 2. In the winter we live in a large and famous city. 3. He will encamp every night four miles from the enemy. 4. I saw certain boys in the city last night. 5. The number of inhabitants of this city is very large. 6. Cæsar's daughter was called Julia. 7. He had not heard about the arrival of Ariovistus, nor

was anything found out from the captives. 8. The voice of my mother was heard at dawn. 9. Many merchants used to come into Gaul every summer. 10. We dismissed every pupil before night on account of the weather. 11. Certain captives were led into the senate.



CHAPTER XLII.

Infinitives of Sum ; Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua) ; Subject of the Infinitive. •

229. Learn the infinitives of sum (p. 222), and the infinitives, both active and passive, of amō and habēō.

The present infinitive has already been introduced in sentences in which it is used in Latin just as in English, and required no explanation ; as, —

**Helvētīī parātī erant obsidēs dare,
Properat in altiōrem locum castra movēre.**

230. For a different use of the infinitive, examine the following sentences : —

DIRECT. **Puer parat,** *the boy is preparing.*

INDIRECT. **Dīcō puerum parāre,** *I say that the boy is preparing.*

DIRECT. **Locus parātus est,** *the place has been prepared.*

INDIRECT. *Putō locum parātum esse, I think that the place has been prepared.*

DIRECT. *Puer parābit, the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

INDIRECT. *Videō puerum parātūrum esse, I see that the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

Observe that the sentences marked **INDIRECT** contain the same statements as the corresponding sentences marked **DIRECT**, but that in the sentences marked **INDIRECT** the statements depend upon a verb of saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving, or the like. A statement thus depending on such a verb is called an *Indirect statement*, or a statement in *Indirect Discourse*.

In English, statements in Indirect Discourse are introduced by the conjunction *that* (which may sometimes be omitted), the subject is in the Nominative (Subjective) case, and the verb in the Indicative mood. In Latin, statements in Indirect Discourse are not introduced by a conjunction, the subject is in the Accusative case, and the verb in the Infinitive.

231. RULE. — *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

232. RULE. — *Statements after verbs (and other expressions) of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are expressed by the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.*

233. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRESENT.

dicīt dicet dixit	{	puerum parāre,	{	he says that the boy is preparing.
				he will say that the boy is preparing.
				he said that the boy was preparing.
dicīt dicet dixit	{	locum parāri,	{	he says that the place is being prepared.
				he will say that the place is being prepared.
				he said that the place was being prepared.

PERFECT.

dicīt	} puerum parā- viſſe,	he ſays that the boy has prepared.
dicet		he will ſay that the boy has prepared.
dixit		he ſaid that the boy had prepared.
dicīt	} locum parātum eſſe,	he ſays that the place has been prepared.
dicet		he will ſay that the place has been prepared.
dixit		he ſaid that the place had been prepared.

FUTURE.

dicīt	} puerum parātū rum eſſe,	he ſays that the boy will prepare.
dicet		he will ſay that the boy will prepare.
dixit		he ſaid that the boy would (was going to) prepare.
dicīt	} locum parātum iri, ¹	he ſays that the place will be prepared.
dicet		he will ſay that the place will be prepared.
dixit		he ſaid that the place would (was going to) be prepared.

Obſerve that in the firſt ſix ſentences the preparing takes place at the ſame time as the ſaying, in the ſecond ſix at a time before (paſt to) the ſaying, in the third ſix at a time after (future to) the ſaying.

234. RULE. — *In Indirect Discourse the Present Infinitive is uſed to-repreſent an action as going on; the Perfect, as completed; the Future, as in the future relatively to the time denoted by the verb of ſaying.*

235.

VOCABULARY.

Athēnae, -ārum, <i>f.</i> , Athens.	putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think.
Rōma, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Rome.	reſpondeō, -ēre, -di, -ſpōnſum, reply.
cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, assert, encourage.	ſciō, ſcīre, ſcīvī, ſcītum, know.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report.	

¹ A more uſual form for the future paſſive infinitive is *fore* (a future infinitive of *sum*) *ut* and the ſubjunctive. See 387.

236.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Impetūs hostium sustinēre nōn est facile. 2. Imperātor scit militēs domōs nostrās occupāre. 3. Omnēs sciunt Rōmā et Athēnās fuisse nōbilissimās urbēs. 4. Dumnorīx neque in colloquium veniet neque exercitum dīmittet. 5. Casticus cōfirmat sē prōvinciam occupātūrum esse. 6. Captīvī putāvērunt exercitūs adventū incolās territōs esse. 7. Dicit aliquis portum nāvibus longis complētum irī. 8. Nūtiābātur exercitum locō¹ proeliō idōneō cōnsēdisse. 9. Repperit principēs Aeduōrum in Britanniam properāvisse. 10. Cicerō respondit sē posterō diē senātum convocātūrum esse. 11. Hortus pūblicus mulieribus ac liberīs complētus est.

II. 1. Who says that the route through the province is easy? 2. The general has already selected a certain man as his lieutenant. 3. Does not everyone know that our slaves have been set free? 4. The merchant reported that the Gauls were men of great stature. 5. My mother knows that neither you nor I am strong. 6. The farmer ascertained that a large number of his horses were standing in the water. 7. Who says that boys like to toil? 8. My daughter says in her letter that she will be in the city in a few days. 9. I did not know that Cæsar had called Divitiacus to a conference. 10. Marcus is not in the garden, nor has anyone of us seen him.

237.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 19-21.]

Caesar Divitiacum, Dumnorīgis frātrem, quī populī Rōmānī amīcus erat, ad sē vocāvit, et dē Dumnorīge multa

¹ The preposition *in* is frequently omitted with *locō*,

dixit. Petīvit ut (*that*) sine (*without*, takes the abl.) eius offēsiōne (*offence*) animī Dumnorīgem pūnīret (*might punish*). Divitiacus ā Caesare petīvit nē (*that . . . not*) Dumnorīgem pūnīret. Caesar Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat. Dīcit sē eī vītam (*life*) dare; tamen (*nevertheless*) cūs-tōdēs eī pōnit (*places*). Eōdēm diē Caesarī ab explō-rātōribus nūntiātur hostēs sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdisse (perfect infinitive of *cōnsidō*) mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castris octō. Iter in montem facile esse nūntiātur. Tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōve-rant (*knew*) montem āscendere (*to ascend*) iubet (*orders*). Ipse quārtā vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant (*had gone*) ad eōs contendit (*hastens*). Pūblius Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemittitur (*is sent ahead*).



CHAPTER XLIII.

Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Expressions of Place.

238. Learn the infinitives, active and passive, of *dūcō* and *audiō*.

Notice the stems and endings.

Give the infinitives, active and passive, of *legō*, *scribō*, *petō*, *mūniō*, *reperiō*, *sciō*.

239. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Expressions of Place.

1. **Militēs in oppidō sunt**, the soldiers are in the town.
2. **Militēs ad montem vēnērunt**, the soldiers came to the mountain.
3. **Militēs ē prōvinciā vēnērunt**, the soldiers came from the province.
4. **Militēs Rōmāe sunt**, the soldiers are at Rome.
5. **Militēs Athēnīs sunt**, the soldiers are at Athens.
6. **Militēs Rōmam vēnērunt**, the soldiers came to Rome.
7. **Militēs Rōmā vēnērunt**, the soldiers came from Rome.

Notice that in expressions of place no prepositions are used with names of towns (4-7), and that with other nouns prepositions are used. **Rōmāe** and **Athēnīs** (4 and 5) are in the locative case (8. 1).

In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative case is like the genitive. Elsewhere it is like the ablative. **Domus** has a locative **domī**, at home, and **rūs** has **rūrī**, in the country.

240. RULE. — I. *Place where is expressed by the ablative with a preposition.*

II. *Place whither by the accusative with a preposition.*

III. *Place whence by the ablative with a preposition.*

But with names of cities and towns: —

IV. *Place where is expressed by the locative.*

V. *Place whither by the accusative without a preposition.*

VI. *Place whence by the ablative without a preposition.*

Domus, home, and **rūs**, country, in expressions of place are used like names of cities.

241.

VOCABULARY.

collis, -is, m. (<i>decl. like ignis</i>), hill.	conveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, (<i>con and veniō</i>) come to- gether, assemble, meet.
Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth.	
Massilia, -ae, f., Massilia.	ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, (ē <i>and dūcō</i>), lead out or away.
occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, kill.	
pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, place, pitch (of a camp).	impediō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, (in- <i>and pēs</i>), hinder, impede.

242.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Explorātōrēs nūtiāvērunt castra in colle pōnī.
 2. Nūtiat aliquis multōs cīvēs Athēnīs occisōs esse.
 3. Dicit quidam nostrās cōpiās omnēs Corinthum conven-
 tūrās esse. 4. Dicēbāsne tuum frātre^m Massiliā vēnisse?
 ✓ 5. Imperātor scīvit mulierem quamque mittī ex oppidō.
 6. Ex explorātōribus repperī Hannibalem ex castrīs
 exercitum suum ēdūxisse. 7. Nūtiātur Caesarem in
 rīpā Rhodanī castra posuisse. 8. Senātus nōn putābat
 Caesarem Rōmam ventūrum esse. 9. Ex captivīs reper-
 tum est ūnum ē filiīs Ariovistī occisum esse. 10. Lēgā-
 tus respondit iter impetū equitum hostium impeditum
 esse.

- II. 1. He said that neither the farmer nor his son had
 come home. 2. He had remained at Rome many years.
 3. We thought that you would come to Rome with your
 mother. 4. It was easy to fortify the hill on which the
 camp had been pitched. 5. She said that she had writ-
 ten a letter to a friend in Athens. 6. Divitiacus asserted
 that he had always been a friend to the Romans. 7. We
 found out that the captives had been led away to a forti-
 fied place. 8. Ariovistus replied to the ambassadors that
 he would neither come to a conference nor withdraw from

Gaul. 9. The general selected from his troops a certain young man as guide. 10. We knew that you had remained a long time at Massilia.



CHAPTER XLIV.

Verbs in *-iō* of the Third Conjugation.

243. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods, active and passive, of *capiō* (p. 237).

Of which conjugation is *capiō*? Why?

Compare each tense with the same tense of *dūcō* and note the differences in formation, if there are any.

Like *capiō*, conjugate all the verbs in *-iō* in **244**.

244.

VOCABULARY.

medius , -a, -um, middle of.	iaciō , -ere, iēcī , iactum , throw.
capiō , -ere, cēpī , captum , take, capture.	recipiō , -ere, - cēpī , - ceptum , take back; sē recipere , re- treat.
faciō , -ere, fēcī , factum , make.	interficiō , -ere, - fēcī , - fectum , slay. [once.
fugiō , -ere, fūgī , fugitum , flee.	statim , <i>adv.</i> , immediately, at
instruō , -ere, - strūxī , - strūc- tum , draw up.	

245.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Capiunt, capiminī, capiēbāmur. 2. Iacis, iaciēs, iaciēbās. 3. Iacitur, iaciētur, iaciēbātur. 4. Fugiēmus Corinthō. 5. Fugiēbāmus ab urbe. 6. Fugiēbant Massiliā. 7. Parātī erant iter facere. 8. In collem sē recipient. 9. Multī dē nostris captī sunt. 10. Putat omnēs interfectōs esse.

II. 1. We are throwing, we shall throw. 2. We shall be taken, they have been taken. 3. We shall make a journey to Rome. 4. They were fleeing to the camp. 5. They throw stones from the wall. 6. Many were being slain at Rome. 7. He reports that the town has been taken. 8. The old men will remain at home. 9. They were marching from home. 10. Stones were thrown by the boys.



246.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs magnā caede oppidum cēperunt. 2. Hostēs in omnēs partēs fugiēbant. 3. Duae filiae fuērunt Ariovistō; hārum altera occīsa est, altera capta est. 4. Statim nūntiat militēs ad montem sē recipere. 5. Nostrī pīla iaciēbant et in castra sē recipiēbant. 6. Caesar respondet Labiēnum cōpiās ē castrīs ēducere et in mediō¹ colle aciem instrūctūrum esse. 7. Poētae² erat in animō Rōmā iter facere Athēnās. 8. Urbs capta est et multi incolae interfectī sunt. 9. Nūntiat castra apud Genāvam posita esse. 10. Quot hominēs Massiliae occīsī sunt? 11. Pater tuus, quī in urbe est, tē domum missum esse nōn scit.

II. 1. He knows that you were often in Corinth. 2. The scouts assembled at dawn, and immediately departed from the camp. 3. Do you think that the enemy will retire to a fortified place? 4. They reported that a line of battle had been drawn up on the middle of the hill. 5. He told the citizens that very many captives were taken in that battle. 6. The general asserted that he would at once take Corinth. 7. I was at home neither

¹ On the middle of, i.e. half-way up.

² See 49.

last night nor the night before. 8. The boys, who threw the stones, have fled. 9. The troops will quickly retire to the nearest hill. 10. The messenger said that he had been hindered at the river.

247.

READING LESSON.

[*CÆSAR, Gallic War, Book I. 22-23.*]

Primā luce summus (*highest, i.e. the top of*) mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, Caesar ipse ab hostium castris mille et quīngentis passibus aberat (*was distant*). Tum (*then*) Cōnsidius ad Caesarem vēnit, dixit montem ab hostibus tenēri. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem dūxit, aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus, quī montem occupāverat, nostrōs exspectābat suāsque legiōnēs ā proeliō continēbat. Multō diē¹ Caesarī per explorātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium propter timōrem (*fear*) falsa (*false things*) sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē Caesar cum cōpiis suis iter fecit et milia passuum tria ab hostium castris castra posuit. Posterō diē Caesar ad oppidum Aeduōrum maximum, Bibracte, quod milia passuum duodēviginti aberat (*was distant*) iter facere cōstituit (*determined*), ubi cōpiam frūmentī esse putāvit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs territōs (*frightened*) fugere putāverunt. Itaque (*therefore*) iter convertērunt (*they turned*) et in novissimum nostrum agmen multōs impetūs faciēbant.

¹ *multō diē, at much day, i.e. when the day was far advanced.*

CHAPTER XLV.

Participles.

248. Learn all the participles, active and passive, of *amō*, *habeo*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *capio*; also of *sum*. Note the stems and endings.

Observe that there is no present passive nor perfect active participle.

Participles ending in *-ns* are declined like *potēns*. See p. 56. Those ending in *-us* are declined like *bonus*. See p. 18.

249. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hostēs pugnantes per urbem currēbant**, *the enemy ran fighting through the city.*
2. **Multōs in urbe occisōs vidēbat**, *he saw many who had been slain in the city (literally, many having been slain, or, many slain).*
3. **Epistulam scriptam ad amicum misit**, *he wrote a letter and sent it to his friend (literally, he sent a letter having been written, or, a written letter to his friend).*
4. **Eum domi manentem saepe vidēbam**, *I often saw him while he was remaining at home (literally, him remaining at home).*
5. **Miles graviter vulnerātus fortiter pugnāvit**, *although severely wounded, the soldier fought bravely (literally, the soldier, having been severely wounded, fought bravely).*
6. **Servus liberātus erit laetus**, *the slave, if liberated, will be glad (literally, the slave, having been liberated, will be glad).*

7. **His rebus moti proelium committēbant**, *because they were influenced by these considerations they joined battle* (literally, *moved by these considerations, they joined battle*).

Observe (1) that the participles in the above sentences agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case, like other adjectives; (2) that the present participle represents an action as going on, and the perfect participle action as completed, with reference to the time denoted by the leading verb; (3) that most of the participles are equivalent to clauses in English. Before translation, ascertain the precise idea expressed by the participle.

The use of the future active participle and the gerundive (sometimes called the future passive participle) is confined for the most part to special constructions, which will be considered in a subsequent chapter.

250.

VOCABULARY.

arma , -ōrum, <i>n.</i> , arms.	cōgō , -ere, cōēgī , cōāctum ,
dēditiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , surrender.	collect, compel.
inopia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , want.	addūcō , -ere, -dūxī , -ductum ,
iūsiūrandum , iūrisiūrandī ,	(<i>ad and dūcō</i>), lead to, in-
(<i>iūs and iūrandum</i>), oath.	duce.
tēlum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , weapon, mis-	ob (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), on account
sile.	of.

251.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Agricolam equōs ad flūmen agentēm vīdimus**. 2. **Civitās ob eam rem incitāta multitudinem hominum ex agrīs cōgēbat**. 3. **Ē locō superiōre in nostrōs (militēs) venientēs tēla iaciēbant**. 4. **Helvētiī omnium rerum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt**. 5. **Centuriō fortissimē pugnāns interficiēbātur**. 6. **Ab hostibus captī statim interficiēmur**. 7. **Hāc orātiōne**

adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant. 8. Legionēs se armis defendentes in collem se recepērunt. 9. Oppidum naturā ac manū munitum expugnatum est. 10. Equitēs impediti in flumine occisi sunt. 11. Ariovistus iureiurandō tenēri nōn coactus est. 12. Cōsēderat cum omnibus cōpiis quae ē multis civitatibus coactae erant.

II. 1. The boy saw his sister writing a letter. 2. Cæsar, as he was influenced by these considerations,¹ pitched his camp on the middle of the hill. 3. The Belgæ, although they fought bravely, were slain. 4. The men, if frightened, will flee at once. 5. Will you come to Corinth? 6. Influenced by a lack of grain and (other) supplies, we shall surrender (make a surrender). 7. He has troops collected from many states. 8. Did you say that Labienus drew up a line of battle? 9. The enemy threw their missiles and retired. 10. We saw your brother as he came home. 11. On account of these things the troops were led out of the camp. 12. They had many arms concealed in the town.



CHAPTER XLVI.

Deponent Verbs.

252. Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive has the active form (*mirātūrus esse*, not *mirātum iri*), and they have the participles of both voices.

¹ *I.e.* things.

mīrāus, *admiring.***mīrātus**, *having admired.***mīrātūrus**, *about to admire.***mirandus**, *to be admired.*

The perfect participle is usually active in meaning, but the gerundive (Chapter LXIII.) is always passive.

253. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.1. **Miles gladiō utitur**, *the soldier uses his sword.*2. **Caesar urbe potitus est**, *Cæsar got possession of the city.*

Observe that *gladiō* is used with *utitur*, and *urbe* with *potitus est*.

A few other verbs are followed by the ablative.

254. RULE. — *The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor and their compounds govern the ablative.*

255. VOCABULARY.**angustiae, -arum, f.**, narrow pass, narrowness.**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus**, use.**fruor, frui, fructus**, enjoy.**impedimenta, -orum, n.**, baggage.**fungor, fungi, fūctus**, perform.**miror, -ārī, -ātus**, admire, wonder at.**potior, potirī, potitus**, get possession of.**sequor, sequi, secūtus**, follow.**vescor, vesci**, eat.**vereor, verērī, veritus**, fear.**256. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. **Nōn hostēs sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum veremur.** 2. **Bonīs libris semper fruimur.** 3. **Nostri impedimentis castrisque potiti sunt.** 4. **Mercator corporum magnitudinem Gallorum mirabatur.** 5. **Caesar hostēs fugientes secutus multos interfecit.** 6. **Ob eam rem milites gladiis facilius utebantur.** 7. **Dicunt ducem hostēs magnā celeritate secutum esse.** 8. **Barbari**

tōtā urbe potītī erant. 9. In prōvinciā multīs rēbus fr̄-
ēbāmur. 10. Dux magnam multītūdinem peditum ex
agris coēgit. 11. Equī fr̄mentō vescuntur. 12. Mārcus
labōre fungitur.

II. 1. The Helvetians and Sequanians give an oath
to each other.¹ 2. The general drew up a line of battle
before the camp. 3. Many of the inhabitants were
killed as they were retiring into the town. 4. Did you
see the boy who threw the stone? 5. The commander
divided among his soldiers² the arms which were
captured. 6. The enemy threw their missiles and fled
into the woods. 7. Whose book did you use? ✓ 8. The
general, after having followed the Helvetians many days,
took possession of their camp. 9. No one enjoys extreme
want. 10. The soldier said at once that he did not fear
the enemy. 11. Eagles eat small animals. 12. The sol-
diers finished (performed) their toil and withdrew.

257.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 24-26.]

Postquam (*after*) id nūtiātum est, cōpiās suās Caesar
in proximum collem dūxit equitēsque contrā hostēs mīsit.
Ipse in colle mediō aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor et
in summō (*the top of*) colle duās legiōnēs et omnia auxi-
lia (*auxiliaries*) posuit, ac tōtum montem hominibus
complēvit. Helvētiī, quī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī
erant, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt (*brought
together*); ipsī nostrōs equitēs superāvērunt et ad prīmam
nostram aciem vērērunt. Caesar celeriter proelium com-
misit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pīla mīsērunt quibus

¹ Cf. 251. I. 7.

² For *among the soldiers* use the dative.

facile hostium aciem perfrēgērunt (*broke through*). Tum (*then*) gladiis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallī diū fortiter pugnāvērunt; tandem (*at length*) in montem quī suberat (*was near*) sē recēpērunt. In itinere et ad montem diū et ācriter pugnātum est. Tandem impedimentis castrisque Helvētiōrum nostrī potiti sunt. Ibi (*there*) Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Helvētiōrum circiter (*about*) milia centum et trigintā ex eō proelio fūgērunt, et quārtō diē in finēs Lingonum (*of the Lingonēs*) vēnērunt.



CHAPTER XLVII.

Possum: Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse.

258. Learn the indicative and the infinitive moods of *possum* (p. 243).

259. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Laudārī est grātum*, *to be praised is pleasant*; or, *it is pleasant to be praised*.
2. *Vidērī nōn est semper esse*, *seeming (to seem) is not always being (to be)*.

Observe that *laudārī* (in 1) and *vidērī* (in 2) are subjects, and that *esse* (in 2) is a predicate. This use of the infinitive is common to both English and Latin, but more common in Latin.

260. RULE. *An infinitive with or without a subject-accusative may be used as the subject of a sentence, as a predicate noun, or as the object of a verb.*

261. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Pugnāre nōn potest, he cannot fight.*
2. *Pugnāre nōn poterat, he could not fight.*
3. *Pugnāre parābant, they were preparing to fight.*

Observe that the infinitive *pugnāre* is used with *potest*, *poterat*, and *parābant* not as subject, but to complete the thought. This use of the infinitive also is common to English and Latin.

Such an infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive*.

262. RULE. — *The infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning.*

Remember that *can* and *could* should usually be expressed by some form of *possum*.

263. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Nihil vidēre potest.* 2. *Vēlōciter currere potes.*
 3. *Iuvāre mē nōn poterat.* 4. *Stāre nōn potuit.* 5. *Sōlī multa reperire potuerāmus.* 6. *Impedimenta capere poterunt.* 7. *Parātus est domum venīre.* 8. *Properābam tē vocāre.* 9. *Coāctī sunt sē recipere.*

II. 1. *I am able to conceal nothing.* 2. *He could not use his foot.* 3. *We shall not be able to come.* 4. *He hurried to assist us.* 5. *I am ready to follow you.* 6. *We could not read.* 7. *He will not be able to run.* 8. *They could not retreat.*

264. VOCABULARY.

<i>amicitia</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , friendship.	<i>iubeō</i> , -ēre, <i>iūssī</i> , <i>iūssum</i> , command.
<i>periculum</i> , -i, <i>n.</i> , danger.	<i>polliceor</i> , -ērī, <i>pollicitus</i> , promise.
<i>praesidium</i> , -i, <i>n.</i> , guard, protection, escort.	<i>possum</i> , <i>posse</i> , <i>potuī</i> , be able.
<i>socius</i> , -i, <i>m.</i> , ally.	<i>sine</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), without.
<i>cadō</i> , -ere, <i>cecidī</i> , <i>cāsum</i> , fall.	

265.

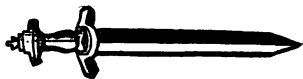
EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar oppidō potiri nōn potuit. 2. Milites armis uti nōn potuerunt. 3. Sociis praesidium polliceri nōn potuerat. 4. In colle equites equis uti nōn potuerunt. 5. Pauci dē nostris hostēs secuti in proelio ceciderunt. 6. Nōne scitis mē vobis omnia tēla divisisse? 7. Sine periculō per angustias iter facere nōn possumus. 8. Eam ob rem vobiscum dē dēditione agere nōn poterimus. 9. Vidistine Cicerōnis dē amicitia librum? 10. Rem publicam¹ in magnō periculō esse cōsul putat. 11. Caesar principēs obsidēs ad sē adducere iussit. 12. Militum labōre centuriōnēs functi sunt. 13. Inopia adducti hominēs equis vescuntur.

II. 1. He says that he is not afraid of you. 2. We could see the baggage of the enemy. 3. The state could not be bound by an oath. 4. Influenced by want, we hurry into the territory of our allies. 5. The consul promised² to protect his allies from wrongs. 6. The general could not come to Rome without a guard. 7. The commander-in-chief ordered a band of men to be collected from the country districts (*agri*). 8. You enjoy the friendship of all good citizens. 9. We made an attack upon the camp, and many brave men fell. 10. The barbarians were astonished at the size of our ships.

¹ *Rēs publica*, public thing, state.

² *Polliceor* is usually followed by future infinitive, *i.e.*, the indirect discourse, but sometimes by the complementary infinitive.



ROMAN SWORD.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

Compounds of Sum.

Dative with Compounds.

266. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods of *prōsum* (p. 244).

The peculiarities of compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *prōsum*, will be readily learned from the vocabulary.

267. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. In periculis amicis aderat, *he aided his friends in dangers.*
2. Dumnorix equitibus praeiuit, *Dumnorix commanded the cavalry.*
3. Liberos amicis committēbant, *they were entrusting their children to their friends.*

Notice that the verbs of the above sentences are compounded with *ad*, *prae*, and *con*, and that they govern the dative case.

268. RULE. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super govern the dative as indirect object.*

The dative is used with all compounds of *sum* except *possum* and *absum*.

269. VOCABULARY.

auxilium, -i, n., help, assistance.	adsum, -esse, -fui, (ad and sum), be present, assist.
Brūtus, -i, m., Brutus.	
vērus, -a, -um, true.	accidō, -ere, -cidi, (ad and cadō), fall upon, happen.
absum, -esse, āfui, (ab and sum), be absent, away, distant.	dēsum, -esse, -fui, (dē and sum), be away, fail.

praesum, -esse, -fui, (prae and sum), be over, at the head of, command.

praepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, (prae and pōnō), place over, place in command of

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, (prō(d) and sum), be profitable, help.

supersum, -esse, -fui, (super and sum), be over, survive. **circiter, adv.,** about.

270.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar hibernis quae fecerat legatum praeposuit. 2. Titus amicis in periculis non deerat. 3. Brutus navibus longis praefuerat. 4. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia centum et quadraginta superfuērunt. 5. Copia librorum discipulis non semper prōdest. 6. Pecuniā vobis adesse possumus. 7. Socii rei publicae auxilium pollicēbantur. 8. Vera amicitia omnibus prōdest. 9. Nautae aliqui de navibus in aquam cadēbant. 10. Sine auxilio castris impedimentisque potiri non poterimus. 11. Peius mihi quam tibi accidit. 12. Domus mea ab urbe milia passuum decem abest. 13. Equites defessi exploratorum labore functi frumentō vescēbantur.

II. 1. The best protection of the republic is the valor of its citizens. 2. The citizens were not able to use the help which had been sent to them. 3. The cavalry followed the enemy many miles. 4. He says that he is not afraid of dangers. 5. I am astonished at the skill of these young men. 6. You could have been present at the conference. 7. Do you think that Brutus will command the army? 8. We enjoy the books which we are reading. 9. The camp of Brutus was about five miles distant from the narrow pass. 10. How many of the allies survived (from) this battle? 11. My father commanded us always to speak the truth (true things).

271.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 27-29.]

Helvëtiî omnium rêrum inopiâ adducti lëgâtôs dë dëditionë ad Cæsarem misërunt, quî in itinere eum convênërunt et pâcem petivërunt. Iüssit eôs in eô locô quô tum (*then*) essent (*were*, subjunctive of *sum*) suum adventum exspectâre. Quod iüsserat fëcërunt. Postquam (*after*) ad eum locum Cæsar vënerat circiter hominum milia sex nocte ë castris Helvëtiôrum fûgërunt atque ad Rhënum finësque Germânôrum contendërunt (*hastened*). Hôs ab eis quôrum per finës iter fëcerant reductôs (*brought back*, perfect passive participle of *redûcô*) Cæsar in hostium numerô habuit;¹ reliquôs in dëditionem recëpit. Helvëtiôs, Tulingôs (*the Tulingi*), Latobrigôs (*the Latobrigi*) in finës suôs unde (*whence*) vënerant reverti (*to return*) iüssit. Hôc bellô Helvëtiôrum et sociôrum circiter milia ducenta quinquägintâ octô occîsa sunt.



CHAPTER XLIX.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

272. 1. *Dumnorix Helvëtiis favet, Dumnorix favors the Helvetians.*
 2. *Puer patrî pâret, the boy obeys his father.*
 3. *Miles gladiô sibi nocuit, the soldier hurt (injured) himself with his sword.*

Observe that these verbs govern the dative in Latin, though their English equivalents are transitive.

¹ In hostium numerô habuit, *held in the number of his enemies, i.e. put to death.*

273. RULE. — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, believe, help, and their opposites, also to command, obey, serve, resist, persuade, and the like, govern the dative.*

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, i.e. corresponding to an English verb with the indefinite *it* as a subject; as, *nocētur*, it hurts (injures), i.e. harm (injury) is done; *patri pārētur*, obedience is rendered to the father. Observe that with the impersonal passive of verbs governing the dative, the dative used with the active is retained unchanged.

Dēlectō, *iuvō*, and *iubeō*, (already familiar to the pupil) and a few other verbs of this class govern the accusative.

✓ 274.

VOCABULARY.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.

lēx, *lēgis*, *f.*, law.

aliēnus, -a, -um, (*alius*), belonging to another, unfavorable.

crēdō, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditum*, (*cf. Eng. credit*), trust.

faveō, -ēre, *fāvī*, *fautum*, favor.

noceō, -ēre, -ui, *nocitum*, harm, injure.

parcō, -ere, *pepercī*, spare.

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, *pāritūrus*, obey.

longē, *adv.*, far, by far.

275.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Boni civēs lēgibus civitātis pārent. 2. Eā orātiōne sibi ac rei publicae nocuit. 3. Scīmus mala omnibus accidere. 4. Ille puer vēra non semper dicit neque ei crēdere possum. 5. Cicerō tōtam prōvinciam Cēsari favēre reppererat. 6. Equitātus Helvētiōrum in aliēnō locō proelium committunt, et tertia eōrum pars occisa est. 7. Iubet servum sōlis occāsū equum ad sē addūcere. 8. Equitātum sine magnō periculō sequi poterimus. 9. Labiēnus prōvinciae praepositus domō in Galliam properāvit. 10. Caesar mulieribus ac liberis pepercit

sed virōs interfēcit. 11. Captivīs nihil¹ nocēbitur.
12. Propter auxili adventum equitātus nōs nōn longē
secūtus est.

II. 1. I was not able to be present at the conference.
2. Brutus was distant from the city about twenty miles.
3. Large armies are not profitable to republics. 4. A
few who had survived from the battle fell in the flight.
5. We were not far distant from the largest town of our
allies. 6. Soldiers promise to obey their generals. 7. The
ambassador did not trust the escort (*praesidium*) which
had been sent. 8. The consul favors severe laws. 9. He
will spare Dumnorix on account of the friendship of his
brother. 10. He was able to assist his younger brothers.
11. Who is at the head of this army?



CHAPTER L.

Ferō and Compounds of Ferō.

276. Learn the indicative, infinitives, and participles
of both voices of *ferō* (p. 247).

Observe that in the forms referred to, the irregularities are
confined to the present tense.

What are the irregularities?

The changes which take place in the final consonant of the
preposition in the compounds will be learned from the principal
parts.

¹ Used adverbially, *in nothing*.

277.

VOCABULARY.

cōnsilium, -i, *n.*, advice, counsel, plan.

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, tribe.

eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.

ferō, *ferre*, **tuli**, **lātum**, carry, bring, bear.

cōferō, -*ferre*, **contulī**, **collātum**, (*con and ferō*), bring together, collect.

effero, -*ferre*, **extulī**, **elātum**, (*ex and ferō*), bring or carry out, produce.

inferō, -*ferre*, **intulī**, **illātum**, (*in and ferō*), bear in or against; **bellum inferre**, begin war.

278.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fert, ferunt. 2. Fertur, feruntur. 3. Effers, effertis. 4. Tulimus, tulit. 5. Effert, infert. 6. Cōferimus, efferunt. 7. Cōferēbat, cōferēbantur. 8. Lātus est, elāti sunt. 9. Collāti sunt, illātum erat. 10. Auxilium ferre potest. 11. Dicit sē auxilium lātūrum esse.

II. 1. We shall carry, he was carried. 2. They collect, they were being collected. 3. You (sing.) carry, you (plur.) are carried. 4. It was carried out, they were carried in. 5. They had collected arms. 6. We said that he would begin war.

279.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cīvēs Rōmānī nōmen rēgis ferre nōn potuerunt. 2. Omnēs Galliae nātiōnēs linguā et lēgibus sunt dissimilēs. 3. Multi sunt in nostrā urbe quī in bellō arma tulērunt. 4. In silvās, palūdēsque incolae fugiunt suaque omnia eō cōferunt. 5. Frūmentum trium mēnsium domō quemque efferre iubet. 6. Bona cōnsilia senum iuvenibus saepe prōfuērunt et semper prōderunt. 7. Neque Aeduis

neque sociis eorum bellum inferam. 8. Mihi hic vir non nocuit, sed ei credere non possum. 9. Circiter mille homines qui in loco alieno coacti erant pugnare interfecti sunt. 10. Pater putat malum filio accidisse.

II. 1. They were daily carrying grain from the fields into the camp. 2. Brutus did not spare his own son. 3. My brother is away, but he will be here in a short time. 4. Only ten days of this month remain. 5. Who was in command of the Roman legions in Gaul? 6. Good cavalry was not lacking in our war. 7. It is not easy to obey all men. 8. My mother favors her youngest son. 9. True friends render assistance in danger and adversity. 10. You see by far the most beautiful part of Gaul. 11. Brutus will be appointed to the command of (*praepōnō*) the cavalry.

280.

READING LESSON.

[*CAESAR, Gallic War, Book I. 30-31*]

Post (*after*) bellum Helveticorum totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum ad Caesarem conveniunt. Petierunt ut (*that*) sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere (*to appoint*) liceret (*it might be permitted*, with dative). Dixerunt sese habere quasdam res quas ab eo petere vellent (*wished*). Hoc Caesar permisit (*permitted*). Principes diem concilio constituerunt. Post concilium pro his Divitiacus apud Caesarem dixit: Galliae totius factiones (*parties*) esse duas; harum alterius ducem esse Aeduos, alterius Sequanos. Hos de potestate multos iam annos bellum gessisse. A Sequanis Germanos in Galliam traductos (*led across*) esse et Sequanorum hostes multis proeliis superavisse; Sequanos

ipsōs Germānis pārēre coāctōs esse. Ducem Germānōrum, Ariovistum, barbarum atque crudēlem (*cruel*) esse. Caesarem exercitū suō eum prohibēre posse nē¹ maiōrem multitudinem in Galliam dūcat, Galliamque omnem ab eius iniūriā dēfendere posse.



CHAPTER LI.

Irregular Verbs Volō, Nōlō, and Mālō.

281. Learn the indicative, infinitive, and participles of *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* (p. 245). Observe that the irregularity of ending is confined to the present tense.

282. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Lēgī parēre vult. 2. Scribere volumus. 3. Labōrāre nōn vult. 4. Legere māvult. 5. Scīre voluit. 6. Pūgnāre nōlunt. 7. Iubēre volēbat. 8. Fugere nōluit. 9. Dixit sē nōlle dūcere. 10. Dīcunt sē mālle sequi.

II. 1. You (sing.) wish to move. 2. He is not willing to lead. 3. We prefer to remain. 4. He desired to be strong. 5. They were not willing to follow. 6. He wishes to be present. 7. They will be unwilling to follow. 8. He says that he prefers to run. 9. What does he wish to say? 10. They wish to command.

¹ nē . . . dūcat, *from leading; or, that he should not lead.*

283.

VOCABULARY.

profectiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , departure.	nōlō, nōlle, nōlai, (<i>nē and volō</i>), be unwilling.
iustus, -a, -um, just.	
cōnor, -āri, -ātus, try, endeavor.	mālō, mālle, mālui, (<i>magis and volō</i>), wish more, prefer.
incidō, -ere, -cidi, incāsum, (<i>in and cadō</i>), fall into, fall in with.	post, (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), after, behind.
volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish.	

284.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōns quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit ab hostibus tenētur. 2. Per prōvinciam nostram sine iniūriā iter facere volunt. 3. Post profectionem equitātūs captivī cūstōdibus nocēre conātī sunt. 4. Nōn vult aliī iniūriam inferre. 5. Senex filiō quī inciderat in rēs adversās auxilium tulit. 6. Mālumus aestāte litus incolere quam in urbe manēre. 7. Virī multārum nātiōnum Rōmam sē suaeque contulerant. 8. Puella ex urbe multa domum efferre vult. 9. Multī cōguntur ad labōrem magnā noctis parte ūtī. 10. Captivī cūstōdibus nocēre cōnātī impedimenta portāre coactī sunt.

II. 1. Many men are not willing to obey the laws of the state. 2. The young man prefers to use his own language (rather) than (that) of another.¹ 3. The boy is not willing to take² the advice of older men. 4. The just judge did not favor the citizens of his own city. 5. Our country produces food for other nations. 6. The general was not willing to encamp in an unfavorable place. 7. Other nations use much food which our country produces. 8. Cæsar spared his enemies, and they (*quī*) slew him. 9. We desire to trust those among whom we dwell. 10. The lieutenants will select a place for a camp and carry thither an abundance of everything.

¹ For *of another* use proper case of *aliēnus*.

² Use *ūtor*.

CHAPTER LII.

Irregular Verbs *Eō* and *Fīō*.*Two Datives.*

285. Learn the indicative, the infinitives, and the participles of *eō* and *fiō* (p. 248).

Notice that *i*, the stem of *eō* is changed to *e* in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, and in the present participle except in the nominative singular.

Fīō is used as the passive of *faciō*.

286. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Ad colloquium it. 2. In urbem ibunt. 3. Initium fugae fit. 4. In vicum iit. 5. Clārus fiēs. 6. Proelium factum erat. 7. Magnus fieri voluit. 8. Nōlui ire. 9. Ierant, ierint in insulam. 10. Nōn fit poēta.

II. 1. We are going to the village. 2. We shall go, he has gone. 3. It happened to be summer. 4. He preferred to go. 5. He has become a man. 6. I desire to become a merchant. 7. They will go in the night. 8. He says that his father has gone. 9. He says that he is about to go. 10. He will become famous.

287. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Aeduī Caesarī auxiliō erant, the Aeduans were (for) a support to Cæsar.*
2. *Equitēs auxiliō Brūtō missi sunt, the cavalry were sent as a support to Brutus.*

Observe that in each sentence one of the datives may be translated by *for*, and the other by *to*. The one translated by *for* is called the dative of *purpose*. The dative of purpose is frequently better rendered as a predicate noun (sometimes with *as*) than by *for*.

288. RULE. — *Two datives, of the object to which and of the end for which, are used with sum and a few other verbs.*

289.**VOCABULARY.**

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
 parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, parent.
 trāns, (*prep. with acc.*), across.
 dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, ought,
 owe.
 eō, ire, ivī (*ī*), itum, go.
 exeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, (*ex and*
 eō), go out or away.

redeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, (*red and*
 eō), go back, return.
 fiō, fierī, factus, (*pass. of*
 faciō), be made, become.
 nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born.
 praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,
 (*prae and ferō*), carry be-
 fore, prefer.

290.**EXERCISES.**

I 1. Alius agricola fierī vult, alius mercātor. 2. Om-
 nēs hūmānitātem voluptātī praeferre dēbēmus. 3. Agri-
 cola auxiliō filiis domum hominem mīsit. 4. Cōnābimur
 ante profectiōnem tuam domum redīre. 5. Parentēs
 nostrī ex urbe exiērunt; multō diē redībunt. 6. Multi
 iuvenēs domō exire quam cum parentibus manēre mālunt.
 7. Omnia nostra cōferēmus et in prōvinciam ibimus.
 8. Senex nātiōnum multārum linguīs ūtitur. 9. Parentēs
 mei ex Graeciā multa efferēbant. 10. Nātus quadrāgintā
 annōs Caesar cōsul factus est. 11. Ubi fuistī dē secundā
 vigiliā proximae noctis? 12. Cūr āfuistī domō? 13. Nā-
 tiōnēs quae trāns Rhēnum incolēbant Gallicā linguā nōn
 ūtēbantur.

II. 1. I shall try to find out his plan. 2. I have always wished to go to Rome. 3. The departure of our parents was (for) a great grief to us. 4. Every one¹ ought to prefer to become good (rather) than famous. 5. He was unwilling to wage war upon his fellow-citizens. 6. In the wars of Rome many citizens were slain. 7. The merchant desired to be away two months. 8. He is a just man and ought to be made a judge. 9. The cavalry of all Gaul came together in one place after Cæsar's departure. 10. We fell in with your parents in Rome twenty days ago.

291.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 33-40.]

Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae (dat. of *cūra*, *care*) futūram esse; crēdere² sēsē auctōritāte suā adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum esse. Tum (*then*) concilium dīmisit. Lēgātī ā Caesare missī ab Ariovistō pōstulāvērunt ut (*that*) in colloquium venīret (*would come*). His Ariovistus respondit sē ventūrum nōn esse. Caesar iterum (*again*) lēgātōs mīsit quī dicēbant eum Aeduōs aliōsque populī Rōmānī amīcōs dēfēnsūrum esse. Eōdem tempore ad Caesarem lēgātī ab Aeduīs et Treverīs (*the Treveri*) veniebant quī dicēbant multōs Germānōs in Galliam vēnisse et in finibus suis cōnsēdisse. His rēbus adductus Caesar bellum quam celerrimē³ cum Ariovistō gerere cōstituit, et Vesontionem (*Vesontio*), quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, ire

¹ The Romans often used *omnēs* where we say *every one*.

² Sometimes the indirect discourse depends upon a verb merely implying the idea of saying (here *pollicitus est*). In English, insert *saying* or *and said*.

³ *quam celerrime*, as *quickly as possible*.

properāvit. Milites, vōcibus territi Gallōrum āo mercā-
tōrum quī ingentī magnitudīne corporum Germānōs, in-
crēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne (*practice*) in armīs
esse dicēbant, longius (comparative of *longē*) ire nōlē-
bant. Eōrum animōs Caesar longā ōrātiōne cōfirmāvit.



CHAPTER LIII.

Derivation and Composition of Words.

292. Latin words, like English words, are sometimes simple, that is, made of one part; and sometimes compound, that is, made of two or more parts, each of which has a distinct meaning. Examples of compound words have already been given, some of which are repeated in the following lists for comparison and further study.

sum,	<i>I am.</i>
ab-sum,	<i>I am away (from), I am absent.</i>
ad-sum,	<i>I am at or near (the person or thing in question), I am present.</i>
dē-sum,	<i>I am away from, I am wanting or lacking, I fail.</i>
prae-sum,	<i>I am before, am in front of, am present, am at the head of (as a leader is in front of the army), I command.</i>
prō-sum,	<i>I am for (a person or thing), I help, am advantageous.</i>
super-sum,	<i>I am over, I am left over, I survive.</i>
pos-sum,	(from <i>pot</i> [<i>is</i>], <i>able</i> , and <i>sum</i>) <i>I am able, I can.</i>
ferō,	<i>I bear, carry, bring.</i>
cōn-ferō,	<i>I carry or bring together (then, because when two or more things are brought together one cannot help seeing their points of resemblance or difference, I compare).</i>

dis-ferō,	<i>I bear or carry apart, I put off, also I differ.</i>
ex-ferō,	(for <i>ec</i> [i.e. <i>ex</i>] -ferō), <i>I bear or carry out.</i>
in-ferō,	<i>I bear or bring in or against.</i>
prae-ferō,	<i>I bear or carry or put before, I prefer.</i>
eō,	<i>I go.</i>
ex-eō,	<i>I go out.</i>
red-eō,	<i>I go back, I return.</i>
capīō,	<i>I take.</i>
re-cipīō,	<i>I take back, recover.</i>
teneō,	<i>I hold.</i>
con-tineō,	<i>I hold together, contain, bound (in geographical sense).</i>
per-tineō,	<i>I hold or stretch through, extend, pertain to.</i>
sus-tineō,	(for <i>sub-teneō</i>), <i>I hold up from underneath, sustain.</i>
ob-tineō,	<i>I hold (against opposition), I maintain.</i>

The prefixes in the compounds given above are of very great use in Latin word-making. Learn their meanings. Notice that when the stem of a verb compounded with one of these prefixes contains a short *a* or *e*, that vowel is changed to short *i* (e.g. *capīō*, *re-cipīō*, *teneō*, *con-tineō*). Notice also that the final consonant of the prefix is sometimes changed to suit the initial consonant of the word with which it is used (e.g. *ex-ferō* for *ec-ferō*, *dis-ferō* for *dis-ferō*, *sus-tineō* for *sub-tineō*).

NOTE. — There are other ways of making compounds, as *iūs-iūrandum*, *oath*, from *iūs*, *right*, *law*, and *iūrandum*, the gerundive of the verb *iūrō*, *to swear*. The composition of such words is explained, as they occur, in the special vocabularies from this point to the end of the book.

293. In the compound words given above, each part retains the meaning it has as a separate word. So, for instance, *eō* is a verb, *go*, and *ex-eō* is also a verb, *go out*. But words are made from other words by *derivation*, as well as by *composition*. Notice *amō*, *love*, *amīcus*, *friendly*

or *friend*, *amicitia*, *friendship*. Here *amō* is a verb, *amicus* an adjective (used also as a noun), and *amicitia* a noun. Yet all evidently belong together in meaning, and all contain the root *am-*.

294. Examine the following: —

imperō (stem imperā-), <i>I command.</i>	imperātor (-ōris, m.), <i>commander, general.</i>
vincō (stem vic-), <i>I conquer.</i>	victor (-ōris, m.), <i>conqueror.</i> <i>victor.</i>

295. RULE. — *The ending -tor added to verb stems forms masculine nouns denoting the agent or doer of an action.*

NOTE. — The verb stem is most easily found for this purpose by removing the ending of the supine. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the ending of the noun is *-sor* instead of *-tor*; as, **dēfendō** (supine **dēfēnsūm**), *defend*, **dēfēnsor**, *defender*. Verb stems are sometimes changed in the supine very much as noun stems of the third declension are changed when the nominative ending is added (52.5; 55).

296. Examine the following: —

dē-dō (supine dēditūm), <i>I surrender.</i>	dēdi-tiō (-ōnis, f.), <i>surrender.</i>
mūniō (supine mūnitūm), <i>I fortify.</i>	mūni-tiō (-ōnis, f.), <i>fortification.</i>
ad-veniō (supine adventūm), <i>I come to, arrive.</i>	adventus (-ūs, m.), <i>arrival.</i>

297. RULE. — *The endings -tiō and -tus, added to verb stems, form abstract nouns expressing action.*

NOTE. — The endings **-iō** (**-ōnis, f.**) and **-tūra** (**-ae, f.**) are used in the same way. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the endings are **-siō**, **-sus**, and **-sūra**; as, **ūtor** (deponent, p.p. **ūsus**), *I use*, **ūsus** (**-ūs, m.**), *use.*

298. Examine the following:—

miles (stem milit-), <i>soldier</i> .	milit-ia (-ae, f.), <i>military service</i> .
amicus (stem amīco-), <i>friend</i> .	amīci-tia (-ae, f.), <i>friendship</i> .
celer (stem celeri-), <i>quick</i> .	celeri-tās (-tātis, f.), <i>quickness</i> .
vir (stem viro-), <i>man</i> .	vir-tūs (-tūtis, f.), <i>manliness, virtue, courage</i> .
magnus (stem magno-), <i>great</i> .	magni-tūdō (-tūdinis, f.), <i>greatness, size</i> .

299. RULE.—The endings *-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō*, added to adjective and noun stems, form feminine abstract nouns expressing quality.

NOTE.—A final *o* of the stem is regularly changed to *i* before these endings (as **amīco-**, **amīcitia**). In **virtūs**, formed from the stem **viro-**, the *o* is dropped. Occasionally the stem is slightly changed in some other way, as in **facultās**, *ability*, from stem **facili-** of **facilis**, *easy*.

300. Adjectives are formed in Latin as in English from nouns (nominal adjectives) and from verbs (verbal adjectives). So few derived adjectives are used in this book that only a few endings can be given here.

The endings **-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus**, added to noun stems minus their final vowel, form adjectives with the sense of *belonging to*; as, **Rōma**, *Rome*, **Rōmānus**, *Roman*; **alius**, *another*, **aliēnus**, *belonging to another or to others, foreign*.

The endings **-ilis** and **-ibilis** added to verb stems form adjectives denoting passive qualities; as, **faciō**, *do*, **facilis**, *doable, easy*; **crēdō**, *believe*, **crēd-i-bilis**, *to be believed, credible*.

301. Verbs are sometimes derived from noun or adjective stems; as, **liberō**, *set free*, from the stem of **liber**, *free*;—sometimes from verb stems. Most verbs

of the first conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *a* or *o* (first or second declension), and many verbs of the fourth conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *i* (third declension). Some verbs of the second and third conjugations, also, are formed from noun and adjective stems.



CHAPTER LIV.

Subjunctive Mood.

Sequence of Tenses; Indirect Question.

302. Learn the subjunctive mood of *sum* (p. 242).

What must be added to the present infinitive to form the imperfect subjunctive? How does the perfect subjunctive differ from the future perfect indicative? What must be added to the perfect infinitive to form the pluperfect subjunctive?

303. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Reperiō ubi sis, ubi fueris, I am finding out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
2. *Reperiam ubi sis, ubi fueris, I shall find out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
3. *Reppererō ubi sis, ubi fueris, I shall have found out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
4. *Reperiēbam ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I was finding out where you were, where you had been.*

5. **Repperī ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I found out where you were, where you had been.**
6. **Reppererām ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I had found out where you were, where you had been.**

The tenses of the principal clauses of the first three examples — the present, the future, and the future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. The tenses of the principal clauses of the last three examples — the imperfect, the perfect, and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

In the subjunctive, the present and perfect are primary; the imperfect and pluperfect, secondary.

304. RULE. — *Primary tenses of the indicative are followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive, and secondary tenses by secondary tenses.*

To represent incomplete action after a primary tense use the present subjunctive, after a secondary tense use the imperfect subjunctive.

To represent completed action after a primary tense use the perfect subjunctive, after a secondary tense use the pluperfect subjunctive.

305. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. **Quis est tuus comes?** *Who is your companion?*
2. **Ubi erās?** *Where were you?*
3. **Cūr āfuiſti?** *Why were you absent?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. **Sciō quis sit tuus comes,** *I know who your companion is.*
2. **Audiſi ubi essēs,** *I heard where you were.*
3. **Repperī cūr abessēs,** *I found out why you were absent.*

Observe (1) that each dependent clause in the examples begins with an interrogative word; (2) that while it has not the form of a question, it gives the substance of the question

opposite; (3) that it depends upon a verb, either as subject or object. Such clauses are called *indirect questions*.

Notice the mood of indirect questions.

306. RULE. — *The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.*

307.**VOCABULARY.**

finitimus, -a, -um, neighbor-
ing; as noun, neighbor,
(fīni-, stem of fīnis, adj.
ending -timus).

Procillus, -ī, m., Procillus.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land.

ūsus, -ūs, m., advantage, use,
experience.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, urge, exhort.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum,
(inter and legō), under-
stand.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus,
pursue.

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quae-
situm, ask, inquire about.

308.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ubi fueris proximā nocte intellegere nōn possum. 2. Cūr domī nōn essēs mirābātur. 3. Māter intellegit quid liberis ūsuī sit. 4. Iulia patriam omnibus terris praefert. 5. Post bellum patria nostra secundis rēbus ūsa est. 6. Magister ā mē quaesivit cūr āfuissem. 7. Quae causa dolōris esset mirātus est. 8. Procillus in ipsum Caesarem hostem equitātū persequentem incidit. 9. Nauta Iuliam sibi uxōrī dēlēgit. 10. Dumnorix et domī et in finitimis civitātibus multōs amīcōs habēbat. 11. Centuriō suōs hortātus expectantibus¹ signum dat. 12. Puerī quī trāns flūmen fūgerunt nōlunt dicere ubi fuerint.

S

II. 1. He asks me why I was absent so long. 2. Cicero was made consul by the Romans when forty-two years old. 3. I will endeavor to be just to every one.² 4. You ought to go home early every day. 5. Your parents

¹ See 51, note.

² With *fūstus* use in with acc., not dative.

know where you are. 6. Your parents knew where you were. 7. After the departure of my friends I returned home. 8. Everybody prefers to go from the city in summer. 9. My father understands what books are agreeable to me. 10. They threw their arms to the ground and fled. 11. We wish to be useful to our neighbors.



CHAPTER LV.

First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active.

Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses).

309. Learn the subjunctive active of *amō*.
Inflect the subjunctive of *nārrō*, *vāstō*, *occupō*, *cēlō*.

310. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Lēgātum mittit ut agrōs vāstet*, he sends a lieutenant that he may lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.
2. *Lēgātum mittit quī (ut is) agrōs vāstet*, he sends a lieutenant who is to lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.
3. *Ex duce petunt nē agrōs vāstet*, they ask the commander that he may not lay waste, not to lay waste, the fields.

Notice the various English equivalents of the subordinate clauses beginning with *ut*, *nē*, and *quī*, and also the mood of the verbs which follow these particles.

What is the difference in meaning between *ut* and *nē*?

Ut . . . vāstet, *quī . . . vāstet*, and *nē . . . vāstet* express the purpose of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *clauses of purpose (final clauses)*.

311. RULE. — *The subjunctive with ut, nē, or a relative is used to express purpose (final clauses).*

CAUTION. — The rule for sequence of tenses given in the last chapter must be observed in clauses of purpose (final clauses).

312.**VOCABULARY.**

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

tūtus, -a, -um, safe.

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum,
(con and gnōscō), find out.

moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum,
advise, warn.

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -litum,
leave.

remaneo, -ēre, -mānsī, *no*
supine; *fut. part.*, remān-
sūrus, (re and maneo),
remain.

vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid.

ut, *conj.*, that, in order that.

nē, *conj.*, that not, in order that
not.

313.**EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. Eum mittit ut vāstet, occupet, iuvet. 2. Eōs mittit ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 3. Eum mīsit ut vāstāret, occupāret, iuvāret. 4. Eōs mittet ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 5. Eōs monet nē cēlent, properent, vītent, liberent. 6. Eum monēbat nē cēlāret, properāret, vītāret, liberāret.

II. 1. He advises them to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 2. He was advising them not to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 3. He sent cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free. 4. He will send cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free.

314.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Labiēnus trāns flūmen magnās cōpiās mīsit quae mūnītum locum occupārent. 2. Caesar quaesivit quot Germānī in Galliā essent. 3. Quaerit quā dē causā sē

vītāverim. 4. Mors clārī poētae dolōrī cīvibus erat. 5. Cūstōdēs captīvōs ad montem fugientēs persequēbantur. 6. Iūssit mulierēs et liberōs ex oppidō exīre ut iniūriam vitārent. 7. Periculī temporibus sociīs auxilium ferre dēbēmus. 8. Trēs legiōnēs reliquit ut oppidum ab impetū hostium tūtum esset. 9. Imperātor mē monet ut domī hiemem. 10. Cognōscēmus ubi arma tua cēlāveris. 11. Maior nātū filius domō discēdere, minor remanēre māvult.

II. 1. He did not know why I was avoiding him. 2. I will see who is in the garden. 3. He advised his son to conceal his plan. 4. He sent his servant to carry grain to his horse. 5. We shall return home at¹ the beginning of summer to ássist our parents. 6. The old man urged his son to hasten home with the utmost speed. 7. He told me why he was hurrying. 8. We shall warn the Helvetians not to attack the towns of our neighbors. 9. I prefer the city where I was born to this (city). 10. We were unable to find the cause (what was the cause) of the boy's death. 11. My mother thinks that I am safer on land.

315.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 41-47.]

Septimō diē postquam (*after*) Vesontiōne castra mōta erant ab explōrātōribus nūntiātum est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milibus passuum quattuor et vīginti abesse. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs misit quī eum in colloquium vocārent. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Ad colloquium Caesar decimæ legiōnis milītēs, quōs sibi

¹ Primā aestāte.

fidissimōs habēbat, in equōs positōs sēcum dūxit. Per eōs Caesar Ariovistum prohibēre voluit nē sē interficere cōnārētur (imperf. subj. of *cōnor*). In colloquiō Ariovistus summā arrogantīā (*the greatest arrogance*) ūsus est equitēsque quī cum eō vēnerant in Rōmānōs lapidēs tēlaque iēcērunt. Caesar cum militibus suis in castra sē recēpit, neque iterum (*again*) vocātus in colloquium ire volēbat, quod sine periculō sē facere posse nōn putābat, sed Gāium Valerium Procillum et Mārcum Metium mīsit. Hīs mandāvit (*commissioned*) ut quae diceret (*said*, imperf. subj. of *dicō*) Ariovistus sibi nūntiārent. Hōs Ariovistus dicere cōnantēs prohibuit et in catēnās (*fetters, chains*) coniēcit (*threw*).



CHAPTER LVI.

First Conjugation : Subjunctive Passive.

Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses).

316. Learn the subjunctive passive of *amō*.

317. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer tam dēfessus fuit ut eum iuvārem, the boy was so tired that I helped him.**
2. **Puer ita fēcit ut nōn amārētur, the boy acted so that he was not loved.**
3. **Germānī tam fortēs erant ut tōtus exeroitus perturbārētur, the Germans were so brave that all the army was disturbed.**



JULIUS CÆSAR.

TO THE
ABBOT

4. **Nēmō tam bonus est quī ab omnibus amētur, no one is so good that he is loved by all.**

The clauses beginning with *ut* and *quī* in these sentences denote result (consecutive clauses). Observe that they are the same in form as purpose clauses, except that *ut nōn* is used instead of *nē* in negative sentences.

318. RULE. — *The subjunctive with ut, ut nōn, or a relative, is used to express result.*

319.**VOCABULARY.**

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change.
inimicus, -ī, m., (in and amicus), a person unfriendly, an enemy.
mēns, mentis, f., mind.
pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

sūspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion.
timor, -ōris, m., fear.
tantus, -a, -um, so great.
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, doubt, hesitate.
ita, adv., so.

320.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Eādem cōpiās quae ad portum cōnsēderant praesidiō nāvibus reliquit. 2. Iter tam difficile erat ut eōdem diē redire nōn cōnārēmur. 3. [✓]Eā pecuniā ita utēmini ut¹ aliis prōsitis. 4. Tantus timor tōtū exercitū occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animique perturbārentur. 5. Caesar ducēs militum convōcāvit ut dēliberārent quid optimum esset. 6. Adventū auxiliōrum tanta commūtātiō facta est ut nēmō in hostēs impetum facere dubitāret. 7. Omnēs finitimōs cognōscere volumus. 8. Caesar terrā marique² inimicōs bellū sibi inferentēs persequēbātur. 9. Pōns in Rhodanō plūribus³ ante annis factus erat. 10. Ex captivīs cognōvit quī cum Cicerōne

¹ Ita ut prōsitis, so that you may (or will) benefit, so as to benefit.

² In this phrase in is regularly omitted.

³ Several.

dēlībērāvissent. 11. Dux mīlitēs hortātus est ut timōris sūspiciōnem vitārent.

✓ II. 1. He fortifies the camp that it may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 2. The town was so fortified that it was not taken by the enemy. 3. The judge was so just that he was praised by all his fellow-citizens. 4. Cicero did not think that death was the end of the soul. 5. He exhorted his sons to avoid bad company. 6. My friend warned me not to spend the winter in Britain. 7. The general understood why I hesitated to remain in camp. 8. The seashore was so pleasant that the boys were delighted. 9. The recruit is made brave by daily experience in (of the) camp. 10. The consul was disturbed in mind and spirit by the suspicion of his enemies.



CHAPTER LVII.

Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood.

Purpose and Result Clauses. — Continued.

321. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *habēō*.

322. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Verbs of Fearing (purpose).

1. *Verētur ut locum occupet, he fears that he will not get possession of the place.*
2. *Verētur nē hostēs locum occupent, he fears that the enemy will get possession of the place.*

3. *Timēbat nē amicum vulnerāret, he was afraid he might wound his friend.*
4. *Timēmus ut in urbem vēnerit, we fear he has not come to the city.*

Observe that in these sentences *ut* is translated with *not* and *nē* without it.

323. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Quin (result).

1. *Nōn dubitō quin amātur, I do not doubt that he is loved.*
2. *Nōn abest suspiciō quin vērum cōlet, the suspicion is not wanting that he is concealing the truth.*
3. *Nōn dubitāverunt quin vērum esset, they did not doubt that it was true.*
4. *Nōn dubium erat quin hostēs vēnissent, there was no doubt that the enemy had come.*

324. VOCABULARY.

militia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , military service.	cōstituō , -ere, -stitūī, -stitū-
voluntās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , will, good will.	tum , arrange, decide.
dignus , -a, -um, (<i>with abl.</i>), worthy.	proficiscor , -ī, profectus , set out.
dubius , -a, -um, doubtful, (<i>cf.</i> Eng. dubious).	contrā (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), against.
	quin , <i>conj.</i> , that, but that.

325. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Nēmō dubitāre dēbet quin nostrī cīvēs prō patriā fortiter pūgnent.* 2. *Pater timet ut filius valeat.*
 3. *Timēbat ut comes fidē dignus esset.* 4. *Nōn est dubium quin iuvenis fidē dignus sit.* 5. *Num potest quisquam dubitāre quin Ūtalia poētārum et imperātōrum sit patria?*
 6. *Suspiciō nōn abest quin in Ūtaliā remaneat ut militiam*

vītet. 7. Quaeris ā nōbīs cūr ita hōc homine dēlectēmur. 8. Cōstituit post mortem patris domum relinquere et in urbem ire. 9. Contrā voluntātem meam accidit ut ex urbe proficisci parārem. 10. Pater filium domum relinquentem monuit ut malōs comitēs vitāret.

II. 1. We feared that Ariovistus intended¹ to remain. 2. It happened that I remained at home. 3. So great was the fear of our soldiers that they did not sustain the attack of the enemies' cavalry. 4. We will find out how many bridges over the Rhone remain. 5. He did not doubt that his neighbors were safe. 6. So great a change in (*of*) affairs was made in a few months that his enemies were greatly disturbed. 7. The lieutenant wished to lead his infantry across the bridge and encamp upon the hill. 8. He feared that his soldiers would not obey. 9. There is no doubt that my brother is present. 10. The general fears that the minds and feelings of the recruits (new soldiers) will be disturbed by the approach of the enemy.

326.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 48.]

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra prēmōvit (*moved forward, prō and mōvit*) et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōsēdit. Posterō diē praeter (*past*) Caesaris castra suās cōpiās dūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ūltrā (*beyond*) eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō ut frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet (*shut off*). Ex eō diē diēs continuōs (*successive*) quīnque Caesar

¹ *Esset in animō.* Cf. *Orgetorigē in animō erat*, 171.

prō castris suās cōpiās ēdūxit ut Ariovistō potestātem pugnandī (*of fighting*, gerund of *pugnō*) daret. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equitatū cottidiē proelium commisit. Genus hoc erat pugnae (*of fight*), quō sē Germānī exercuerant (*had trained*). Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem (*just so many*) numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī ac fortissimī. Cum hīs in proelia equitēs ibant. Ad eōs sē recipiebant. Hī in periculis equitēs iuvābant, et tanta erat eōrum celeritās ut nōn minus vėlōciter quam equi currerent (imperf. subj. of *currō*).

CHAPTER LVIII.

Imperative Constructions.

Wishes.

327. Learn the present imperative of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, *nōlō*.

328. Imperative constructions include all kinds of commands, requests, and permissions. The following are the most common : —

POSITIVE.

NEGATIVE.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. properēmus, <i>let us hurry.</i></p> | <p>nē properēmus, <i>let us not hurry.</i></p> |
| <p>2. { properā, <i>hurry,</i>
 or
 properēs, <i>you (one) must</i>
 <i>hurry.</i></p> | <p>{ nōlī properāre,
 or
 nē properāveris, } <i>do not hurry.</i></p> |

POSITIVE.

NEGATIVE.

3.	{	properet,	{	<i>let him</i>	{	nē properet,	{	<i>let him not</i>
		or		<i>hurry,</i>		or		<i>hurry,</i>
		properāverit,		<i>he shall</i>		nē properāverit,		<i>he shall not</i>
				<i>hurry.</i>				<i>hurry.</i>

329. Commands, requests, and permissions are expressed by the subjunctive, except in the second person, and in the second person they may be expressed by the subjunctive.

1. The second person of the subjunctive in positive commands is rarely used except when the subject is *you* in the sense of *one* or *people*.

2. Negative commands of the second person are expressed by *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the present infinitive, or by the present or perfect subjunctive with *nē*.

3. Notice that in imperative sentences there is no difference in the translation between the present and the perfect subjunctive.

4. Notice that *nē* is the negative in imperative sentences.

330. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

(*Utinam*) **bonus sīs,** *may you be good.*

Utinam bonus essēs, *would you were good.*

Utinam bonus fuissēs, *would you had been good.*

(*Utinam*) **nē malus sīs,** *may you not be bad.*

(*Utinam*) **nē malus essēs,** *would you were not bad.*

(*Utinam*) **nē malus fuissēs,** *would you had not been bad.*

Notice that *utinam* is sometimes translated, and sometimes merely shows that the sentence in which it occurs is a wish. Notice, also, that *utinam* may usually be omitted in Latin. Notice that when the wish refers to the future the present

subjunctive, when it refers to the present the imperfect, and when it refers to the past the pluperfect, is used. When the wish refers to the present or past, it is unfulfilled. Compare the subjunctive in conditions, 337-340. Observe that the negative is *nē*.

331. RULE.— *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, often introduced by utinam. The negative is nē. Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and referring to the past the pluperfect.*

332.

VOCABULARY.

pecus , -oris, <i>n.</i> , flock, cattle.	cūrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take care, cause.
antīquus , -a, -um, ancient.	solēō , -ēre, solitus, (semi-dep.) be accustomed.
nūllus , -a, -um, no, no one.	trānseō , -ire, -iī, -itum, (trāns and eō), go across, cross.
audeō , -ēre, ausus, (<i>dep. in perf., plup., and fut. perf.</i>), dare.	vīvō , -ere, vixi, victum, live.
cōgitō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.	utinam , O that, would that.

333.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Properā, mī fili, domum redire.* 2. *Librōs, discipulī, domum vōbiscum nē portāveritis.* 3. *Nē quisquam hunc hostem timuerit.* 4. *Nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longās epistulās scribere.* 5. *Cūrā ut vir dignus patre sis et cōgitā quō in locō stēs.* 6. *Semper audēte vērā dicere.* 7. *Nē solitī sitis hunc agrum trānsire.* 8. *Nūllī erat dubium quīn arma contrā Caesarem parārentur.* 9. *Antiquī Germānī nōn, multum frūmentō sed magnā ex parte¹ pecore² vivēbant.* 10. *Nōn tam ācer civis sum ut putem militiam esse semper grātā.* 11. *Dēbēmus ita*

¹ *In great part, largely.*

² *i.e. the flesh of their cattle.*

vivere ut aliis prōsimus. 12. Nē militēs dē mortis periculō cōgitāverint. 13. Utinam māter adesset. 14. Utinam domō āfuissem.

II. 1. The minds of the soldiers were seized with so great fear that they were thrown into disorder. 2. The general feared that his speech might be too long. 3. He decided to go (set out) to Britain to avoid wrong from (of) his enemies. 4. I do not doubt that the bridge is safe. 5. Send the boy home. 6. Do not send the boy home. 7. Let the soldiers avoid the suspicion of fear. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. These boys so act that they are loved by everybody. 10. Cæsar had perceived the good will of Divitiacus towards himself. 11. He wished to drive his flock to a safe place. 12. No one¹ doubts that the ancient Germans were brave. 13. May they not dare to cross.



CHAPTER LIX.

Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive; Conditional Sentences.

334. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *dūcō*.

335. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

SI adest, laetī sumus, if he is present, we are glad.

SI aderat, laetī erāmus, if he was present, we were glad.

¹ See I. 8.

SI aderit, laetī erimus, if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.

SI adfuit, laetī fuimus, if he was (has been) present, we were (have been) glad.

Notice that each sentence consists of two clauses, — a condition introduced by *si* (if), and a conclusion. The truth of the conclusion depends upon the truth of the condition. Such sentences are called *conditional sentences*.

Notice that in the sentences given above nothing is implied as to the truth of the assertions. It is simply stated that *if* the condition is (was, shall be) true, the conclusion is (was, shall be) true. Such conditions are called *simple conditions*. Notice the mood of the verbs.

Notice that in simple future conditions the future tense is used when in English we use the present.

NOTE. — Conditions referring to action completed in past time are in the pluperfect; as, *si adfuerat, if he had (at some previous time) been present*. But these do not often occur.

Sometimes a future conclusion depends upon a condition which will already belong to past time when the conclusion shall or may become true; as, *If I come, I shall go back*. I evidently cannot go back until after I have come; the condition therefore refers to the past; but the whole sentence refers to the future, therefore the condition must refer to the past and the future at once, *i.e.* must be in the future perfect tense, *si vēnerō, redībō*.

336. RULE. — *In simple conditional sentences the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.*

337. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

SI aderit, laetī erimus, if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.

SI adsit laetī simus, if he should be present, we should be glad.

Notice that these sentences refer to the future. The second differs from the first only in being *less vivid*, implying that the

speaker is in doubt, or is unwilling to make a plain, simple statement. Notice the moods and tenses. Compare 330, 331.

338. RULE. — *Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

NOTE. — The form of the less vivid condition corresponding to the future perfect indicative of the simple (more vivid) condition (see 335, note) is the perfect subjunctive, *si vēnerim, redeam*, *if I should come (have come), I should go back.*

339. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

SI adesset, laetī essēmus, *if he were present, we should be glad.*

SI adfuisset, laetī fuissēmus, *if he had been present, we should have been glad.*

Notice that in these sentences the condition is supposed to be untrue. Such conditions are called *conditions contrary to fact*. Notice the mood and the tenses of the verbs. Compare 330, 331.

340. RULE. — *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

341. VOCABULARY.

opus, operis, n., work.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report, [*pref. re- + nūntiō*].

resistō, -ere, restitī (no supine), resist, [*pref. re- + sistō (redu- plicated form from stō, stand)*].

revertor, revertī, reversus sum, revertō, -ere, -revertī, re- versum.

} return, go back. [*re- again, + ver- tor, turn*]. *The deponent forms are used chiefly in the present, imperf. and fut., the active forms in the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf.*

quis, quae (qua), quid, *indef. pron.*, any, any one, one.

quī, qua (quae), quod, *indef. pron.*, any (see 226).

sī, *conj.*, if.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, [nī (*for* nē) + sī (*with shortened vowel*)].

342.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Si magnum pecoris numerum in castris habent, inopiā superārī nōn possunt. 2. Si revertētur ut nobis resistat, tertiō diē pugnābimus. 3. Si dignus essēs quī¹ Rōmānus appellārēris, hostibus resisterēs. 4. Si tanta erat operis altitūdō, hostibus facile resistere poterant. 5. Lēgātus nisi interfectus erit, in Ītaliā revertētur ut cōsuli haec renūntiet. 6. Si quis barbaris restitit, nōn dubium est quīn interfectus sit. 7. Militēs nisi castra dēfendere poterunt, nōn dubium est quīn omnēs fugiant. 8. Si flūmen trānsiit ut in oppidum fugeret, nōn dubitō quīn vivat; sī domī remānsit, interfectus est. 9. Si vērūm est quod explōrātōrēs renūntiāvērunt, hostēs ad castra venīre nōn ausī sunt. 10. Si equitēs Rhēnum trānsiērunt ut loci nātūrā cognōscerent, peditēs apud flūmen remānsērunt quī pontem dēfenderent.

II. 1. If one dares to resist, there is no danger. 2. No pain is so great that it cannot be borne if one wishes to bear it. 3. I do not doubt that the soldiers have returned to the work. 4. If you have determined to go against the enemy, you ought to think of the safety of the flocks. 5. If any dare not remain, let them return² home. 6. If the soldiers have not fled, the enemy have not taken the camp. 7. If you wish (use *volō*), you may return on the

¹ Cf. 317, 4.

² In Latin, as in English, the conclusion of a conditional sentence sometimes takes the form of a command, which must be expressed by the proper part of the verb. See Chapter LVIII.

fifth day. 8. The ancient Romans were accustomed to bear the toil of military service with the greatest goodwill in order that they might deserve (be worthy) to be praised. 9. May you take care to answer truly (true things). 10. If you do not dare to resist the enemy, I fear you are not worthy to return to military service. 11. If any are accustomed to think of their own safety, they are not worthy to be called soldiers.

III. 1. Nisi magnum pecoris numerum in castris habuissent, inopiā superātī essent. 2. Si quis nobis resistere audebit, interficietur. 3. Imperator si in castra revertatur, summā militum voluntate contra hostes proficiscatur. 4. Caesar si adfuisset, pugnāvisset; si pugnāvisset, hostes superāvisset; si hostes superāvisset, Galliam occupāvisset. 5. Si vērā captivus respondit, milites fortiter opus defendērunt. 6. Nisi quis de hostium adventū nuntiāvisset, castra nostra capta essent. 7. Captivus nisi vērā respondisset, statim a militibus interfectus esset. 8. Nisi Labienus ante solis occasum revertatur, milites longō labore defessi de deditiōne cogitent. 9. Milites si statim a castris educantur, hostibus fortiter resistant. 10. Si ante sextam hōram in urbem cōsul venerit, primā noctis vigiliā contra hostes ire properābimus. 11. Utinam nē cum Germānis proelium commisisset.

IV. 1. If we do not take possession of the bridge, we shall not be able to cross the river. 2. If the soldiers who were in the town had not been frightened, they would not have fled. 3. If you should try to avoid death, you would not deserve (be worthy) to be called brave. 4. The forces of the enemy are so great that they would take the town if our men were not resisting

bravely. 5. If the place had not been surrounded by a wall, we should not have dared to remain. 6. If the Romans had not been tired by (their) work, they would have remained at the bridge to resist the Germans. 7. We shall not be able to return to camp unless some one comes to aid us (to us as an aid) before sunset. 8. If the foot-soldiers should run quickly to the river, they would seize the bridge. 9. If the general had not led out the soldiers from the camp into line of battle, the enemy would have set out for home on that day. 10. If the Gauls should make an attack upon our men, they would betake themselves to the camp.

343.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, I. 49.]

Ubi (*when*) Ariovistum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius (compar. of *diū*) commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā (*beyond*) eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sēscentōs ab eis, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici (*triple*) instructā (perf. pass. part. of *instruō*)¹ ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sēscentōs, uti (*as*) dictum est, aberat. Eō (*thither*) circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita (*unencumbered, in fighting trim*) cum omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiā nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne (*from fortification*)

¹ Aciē triplici instructā, a triple line being drawn up, i.e. having formed a triple line. So below, mūnitis castris, the camp having been fortified, i.e. when the camp was fortified. See Chapter LXII., Ablative Absolute.

prohibērent. Caesar, ut (as) ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre (*drive off*), tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Castris mūnītis¹ duās ibi (*there*) legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit (*led back*).



CHAPTER LX.

Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive.

Clauses with Cum.

344. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *audiō*.

345. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum civitas bellum infert, ducēs dēliguntur, when the state begins a war, leaders are chosen.

cum haec legēs, aderō, when you read (i.e. shall read) this, I shall be present.

oppidum Britannī vocant, cum silvās mūniērunt, the Britons call it a town, when they have fortified the woods.

cum vāneris, cognōscēs, when you come (i.e. shall have come), you will find out.

Observe the mood and tenses.

346. RULE. — *Cum* meaning when (*cum temporal*) takes the indicative to define a time.

¹ See p. 171, note.

347. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum esset Caesar in Galliā, lēgātī vērūnrum, *when Cæsar was in Gaul, envoys came.*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est, *when that was (i.e. had been) announced to Cæsar, he set out from the city.*

348. RULE. — *In narrative, cum meaning when or as (cum historical) takes the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to describe a time.*

NOTE. — The indicative is used with **cum** when a *date* is given, the subjunctive when a *situation or circumstance* is given involving the idea of time. Generally dates are given in primary tenses, and therefore **cum** with the imperfect and pluperfect indicative is rare. When a time is *described*, the tenses used are naturally secondary, hence the use of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with **cum** in narrative.

349. VOCABULARY.

Britannus, -i, m., a Briton, inhabitant of Britain.

magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistrate, magistracy [*stem of magister (master) + a (as if from a verb of first conj.) + tus*].

mūnitō, -ōnis, f., fortification [*mūni (of mūnīō) + tō*].

cum, conj., when, as, since, although.

tamen, conj., nevertheless, still, however.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, contend, struggle, hasten [*pref. con + tendō, stretch*].

pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come through, arrive [*per + venīō*].

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer.

bene, adv., well.

350. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ad amīcōs, cum ūsus est, Gallī sē recipiunt.
2. Caesar cum Helvētiōs vicisset, multōs annōs cum aliīs bellum gerēbat.
3. Helvētīi cum omnia cōstituissent, Orgetorigem ducem dēlēgerunt.
4. Ille cum dux

dēlēctus esset, Dumnorīgem addūxit ut rēgnum occupāre cōnārētur. 5. Cum magistrātūs multitudinem hominum ex agrīs cōgerent, Orgetorīgis mors eis nūntiāta est. 6. Barbarī cum oppidum cēpērunt, incolās interficiunt. 7. Dux cum hostēs vicerit exercitum dīmittet nisi ei a senātū imperātum erit ut cum Germānīs bellum gerat. 8. Sī vīs domum revertī, cūrā ut respondeās. 9. Ea rēs cum imperātōrī renūntiāta esset, in castrīs milītēs dēfessōs continuisset nisi veritus esset nē Germānī ad Rhēnum pervenīrent. 10. Britannī antīquī pecoribus et frūmentō vīvere solēbant. 11. Sī hostēs dē periculō cōgitant, nulli flūmen trānsire audēbunt.

✓ II. 1. When the soldiers heard the shout, they hastened into the city. 2. When the enemy had fortified the camp, they led out their forces into line of battle. 3. If the work of the fortification is done, cross the river and resist the enemy. 4. When the general himself heard the enemy coming, he gave the signal to the soldiers. 5. When an army arrives at a suitable place for a camp, they surround themselves with a fortification that they may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 6. When the shout of (those) fighting was heard in the camp, the soldiers hastened to the river. 7. When the camp had been fortified, the magistrates of the Gauls returned to Labienus to ask for (seek) peace. 8. Do not resist the enemy, lest they hasten to cross the Rhine and return home. 9. When the cavalry return, they will quickly make an end of the battle. 10. When the Helvetians had already made their way through the territory of the Sequanians, they arrived in the territory of our allies.

351. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum haec vĕra sint, bene est, *since these things are true, it is well.*

cum dĕfessus essem, domĭ manĕbam, *since I was tired, I staid at home.*

cum adessem, mĕ nōn vĭdistĭ, *although I was present, you did not see me.*

hoc cum audierim, nōn crĕdĕ, *although I have heard this, I do not believe it.*

352. RULE. — *Cum* *causal* and *concessive* (meaning *since* and *although*) *takes the subjunctive in all tenses.*

353. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs cum proeliō superātī essent, tamen nōn fūgērunt. 2. Hostēs cum dux interfectus esset in castra sē recēpērunt. 3. Cum magna pars aestātis reliqua sit, in Britanniarū profectus est. 4. Cum vivāmus, laetī sīmus. 5. Cum vēnerit nūntius novās rēs cognōscēmus. 6. Explōrātor cum multās rēs repperisset tamen nihil renūntiāre ausus est. 7. Haec cum bene fēcisset, laudātus est. 8. Dux cum multa bene fēcisset, tamen ab inimicīs accūsātus est. 9. Cum timōris sūspiciōnem vitāveris fortem esse tē dicimus. 10. Militēs, cum nēmō sine vulnere esset, tamen ad noctem resistēbant.

II. 1. Although he was of small stature (body), he was a brave general. 2. Since he had arrived at the city, he determined to remain. 3. Since the magistrates have come, let us hasten to go to the council. 4. Although the Britons have been conquered, I shall not return to Gaul. 5. Since the fortifications are high, we can easily resist the enemy. 6. Since you have come to

me, I will lead you to a safe place. 7. Although the soldiers are fighting sharply, they cannot overcome the enemy. 8. Since a great change of circumstances (things) has been brought about (made), let us seek safety in flight. 9. Although Cæsar had led out his legions into line of battle, the enemy remained in their camp. 10. Since the Gauls did not come against us, we returned into the fortifications.



CHAPTER LXI.

Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs.

Indirect Discourse.

354. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *possum*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *eō*, *fiō*, and *ferō*.

Review the rules for simple indirect discourse (p. 119).

355.

VOCABULARY.

imperium, -i, *n.*, command, rule, power, sway, [*imper* (of *imperō*, command) + abstract ending -ium].

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

turris, -is (*acc.* -im), *f.*, tower.

etiam, *conj.*, even, also, [et + iam].

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum, finish, wear out (*esp. in perf. pass. partic.*) [con + faciō].

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think, consider, [ēx + aestimō, compute (*ae weakened to i*)].

356.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūntius respondit turrīm iam cōfectam esse. 2. Sī scribere potuisset, Britannōs ad urbis portam ventūrōs esse scrīpsisset. 3. Etiam cum ē mūnitiōne exirēmus, hostēs pugnātūrōs esse nōn existimābāmus. 4. Caesarī renūtiābātur milītēs vulneribus iam cōfectōs esse. 5. Caesar cum cognōvisset Britannōs iam victōs esse, ad castra mūnitiōnēsque pervenire contendit. 6. Galli etiam sī Caesaris imperium ferre nōluissent, tamen resistere nōn potuissent. 7. Sī celeriter castra fiant hostibus resistere possīmus. 8. Nisi ad opus revertī quam in pugnā manēre māluissētis facile hostēs vīcissētis. 9. Lēgātus dīcebat sē tertiō diē ad suōs ventūrum esse. 10. Sī quis dīcet sē pugnam vīdisse, respondē pugnam neque fuisse neque futūram esse.

II. 1. I saw that the Gauls were returning; had returned; would return. 2. If you did not bear the toils of war, I should not say that you were brave. 3. If he had not been willing to go, he would not have gone. 4. Even if they thought that their allies were brave, they would wish to defend themselves with a fortification. 5. When he had seen that the magistrates were present, he said that he would reply immediately. 6. The messenger replied that the enemy had run to the gates and (*atque*) had seized even the tower. 7. They say that they cannot endure the rule of the Romans. 8. They announced that the foot-soldiers would seize the gates. 9. When they saw that the hill had been seized by the enemy, they understood that they were conquered. 10. If you think that the place is suitable for a camp, let us go thither.

357. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. DIRECT. **SI** quid vīs, cūr nōn venīs ad mē? *If you want anything, why do you not come to me?*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus** tuus respondet, **sī** quid vellis, cūr nōn veniās ad sē, *your friend replies, if you want anything, why don't you come to him.*

(secondary tense). **Caesar** respondit, **sī** quid **Ariovistus** vellet, cūr nōn venīret ad sē, *Cæsar replied, if Ariovistus wanted anything, why did he not come to him.*

2. DIRECT. **Veni** sī vīs, *come, if you wish.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus** tuus dīcit, veniās sī vellis, *your friend says (that) you may come if you wish.*

(secondary tense). **Caesar** dīxit **Ariovistus** venīret sī vellet, *Cæsar said (that) Ariovistus might come if he wished.*

3. DIRECT. **SI** aderat **Titus**, puer bene fēcit, *If Titus was present, the boy did well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dicō** sī adfuerit **Titus** bene puerum fēcisse, *I say that if Titus was present, the boy did well.*

(secondary tense). **Dixi** sī adfuisset **Titus** bene puerum fēcisse, *I said that if Titus was present, the boy did well (at some time before I said it).*

4. DIRECT. **Cum** **Titus** adest, puer bene facit, *when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dicō** cum **Titus** adsit bene puerum facere, *I say that when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

(secondary tense). **Dixi** cum **Titus** adesset bene puerum facere, *I said that when Titus was present, the boy did well.*

Notice the moods. Notice also how the tenses differ in the different sentences. Observe that the first and second persons of the Direct Discourse are usually changed (in Latin as in English) to the third person in the Indirect Discourse.

358. RULE. — *In Indirect Discourse, questions, commands, and subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive.*

359. RULE. — *If the verb of saying, etc., introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a primary tense, the subjunctives are present or perfect; if it is in a secondary tense, the subjunctives are imperfect or pluperfect.*

NOTE. — As the subjunctive lacks the future and future perfect tenses, the future indicative of the Direct Discourse is represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, and the future perfect indicative by the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. S. *si aderō, bene erit*, if I am (i.e. shall be) present, it will be well, becomes, if quoted indirectly, *dicit si adsit bene futurum esse*, he says that if he is present, it will be well, or (using a secondary tense) *dixit si adesset bene futurum esse*. See also 337.

360.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux exīstimāvit mīlitēs, sī vellent, vincere posse. 2. Vobīs dicō, sī laudārī velītis, fortēs sītis. 3. Magistrātus dīxērunt Caesarem sī Britannōs vicisset in Galliam reversūrum esse. 4. Magistrātui nūntiatum est omnēs hostium legiōnēs in Itāliam revertisse. 5. Dux mīlitibus dīxit, sī hostibus resistere vellent, mūnitiōnēs cōficerent. 6. Nūntiatum est portam, cum Labiēnus ad mūnitiōnēs pervēnisset, iam occupātam esse ā Gallīs. 7. Lēgātus intellēxit peditēs in castra sē receptūrōs esse nisi quis auxiliō eis veniret. 8. Centuriōnibus dīxit, cum mūnitiōnēs iam cōfectae essent, castrīs mīlitēs continērent. 9. Imperātor, cum hiemem iam adesse cōgnōvisset, in hiberna legiōnēs dūxit. 10. Nūntiatum est hostēs, cum

vincere nōn potuissent, primā vigiliā salūtem fugā petītūrōs esse.

II. 1. Fight bravely if you wish to be praised. 2. The general said that the soldiers must fight bravely if they wished to be praised. 3. When the messenger had arrived at the town he went to the magistrates. 4. He told the magistrates that when the camp was taken the Gauls had sought safety in flight. 5. The magistrates replied, that since the Gauls had been conquered, they would receive the Romans in (into) the city. 6. When the messenger had returned to the army, he reported that the magistrates would not return. 7. When he heard this, the general said that he should move the camp at daybreak, since he had done all (the things) on account of which he had come. 8. He thought that, since the leaders of the enemy had been slain, his soldiers would be safe in the city. 9. When the army had been led into the city, the general called the magistrates to him. 10. He said that since they had received him and his soldiers in the city, he counted (held, *habēre*) them in the number of his friends.

361.

READING LESSON.

[*CÆSAR, Gallic War, I. 50, 51.*]

Proximō diē Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra Caesaris minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit (*led back*). Cum ex captīvīs Caesar quaereret quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō contendere nōn vellet, hanc reperiēbat causam: apud Germānōs eam cōnsuetūdinem (*custom*) esse, ut mātṛēsfamiliae (*matrons*) eōrum sortibus (*by lots*) et vātīcinātiōnibus (*by*

prophecies) dēclārarent (*dēclārō, declare*) utrum (*whether*) proelium committere dēbērent necne (*or not*); eās ita dicere: Germānōs superātūrōs nōn esse, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. Posterō diē Caesar prae-sidium castris reliquit (*left*); ipse triplici acie instrūctā (see note on last reading lesson) ad castra hostium accēs-sit (*went close up*). Germānī coāctī sunt cōpiās suās castris ēducere. Omnem aciem carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs (*hope*) fugae relinquerētur. In carris mulie-rēs stābant quae eōs hortābantur ut fortiter pugnārent.



CHAPTER LXII.

Participles. (*Review.*)

Ablative Absolute.

362. Review the participles and their declensions (p. 128).

363. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| <p>1. duce vocante
militēs con-
veniunt,</p> | <p>{ <i>the leader calling,</i>
<i>when the leader calls,</i>
<i>at the call of the leader,</i></p> | <p>{ <i>the soldiers assem-</i>
<i>ble.</i></p> |
| <p>2. Caesar bellō
cōfectō in
castra rediit,</p> | <p>{ <i>the war having been fin-</i>
<i>ished,</i>
<i>when (or after) the war</i>
<i>was finished,</i>
<i>since the war was fin-</i>
<i>ished,</i>
<i>having finished the war,</i></p> | <p>{ <i>Cæsar returned to</i>
<i>camp.</i></p> |

- | | | | | |
|---|---|--|---|----------------------------------|
| 3. equitibus fugientibus pedites interfecti sunt, | { | the horsemen fleeing,
when the horsemen fled,
since the horsemen fled,
on account of the flight
of the horsemen, | } | the foot-soldiers
were slain. |
| 4. hoc factum conveniēmus, | { | this having been done,
when this has been done,
after doing this, | } | we shall assemble. |
| 5. eo duce hostes viciſtis, | { | he being leader,
when he was leader,
under his leadership,
with him as leader, | } | you conquered the
enemy. |
| 6. parte aestatis reliquā domo exibunt, | { | part of the summer remaining,
since part of the summer remains,
if part of the summer remains, | } | they will go out
from home. |

Notice that in 1, 2, 3, and 4 a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement with it are put in the ablative to designate the time or circumstances of the action expressed by the main verb. The place of the participle may be taken by a noun (*duce* in 5) or an adjective (*reliquā* in 6). The ablative used in this way is called the *ablative absolute*.

364. RULE. — *The ablative absolute is used to designate the time or circumstances of an action.*

365. In the use of the ablative absolute the following things are to be observed: —

1. The noun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. If we wish to say in Latin, *the leader*

fled, having been defeated, we must say *dux victus fugit*, for *leader* is the subject of *fled*, therefore *dux* must be the subject of *fugit*, and the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative; then *having been defeated* modifies *leader*, therefore *victus* must modify *dux*, and must therefore be in the same case as *dux*, that is, in the nominative.

2. The ablative absolute may be translated in various ways; as (a), by the English absolute construction (*bellō cōfectō, the war having been finished*); (b) by a temporal clause (*bellō cōfectō, when the war was finished*); (c) by a concessive clause (*bellō cōfectō, although the war was finished*); (d) by a condition (*bellō cōfectō, if the war was finished*); (e) by various expressions suited to the sentence in which the ablative absolute stands (so *bellō cōfectō, at the end of the war, or on the completion of the war*).

3. The ablative absolute is often used in Latin where an independent co-ordinate verb would be used in English; as, *Caesar, bellō cōfectō, domum rediit, Caesar finished the war and returned home.*

4. In Latin there is no perfect active participle. If therefore we wish to say in Latin, *Cæsar, having finished the war, returned to camp*, we cannot use, as in English, a participle in agreement with *Cæsar*, but instead, *Caesar, bellō cōfectō, in castra rediit*. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a clause with *cum*; as, *Caesar, cum bellum cōfēcisset in castra rediit*. Deponent verbs have the perfect participle, and therefore offer no difficulty in translation. Thus *Cæsar, having exhorted the soldiers, led them against the enemy* can be translated *Caesar militēs cohortātus contrā hostēs dūxit*.

5. In Latin there is no present passive participle and no future passive participle. When an English sentence contains one of these participles, the idea must be expressed in Latin by a clause with *cum* (or some other conjunction) or the voice must be changed to the active.

366.

VOCABULARY.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, let go, lose, [ā + mittō].	persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, (with dat.; also ut and subj.), persuade, [per + suādeō, urge].
arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, think, suppose, believe.	satis, adv., enough.
efficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, effect, accomplish, [ec (for ex, changed to ef before following f) + faciō].	spēs, spei, f., hope, expectation. sub, prep. usually with abl., but after verbs of motion with acc., under, close to, at the foot of.

367.

EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as you can.]

I. 1. Omni spē āmissā Britannī ad mūnitionēs pervenire contendērunt. 2. His rēbus cōfectis magistrātūs cīvibus persuāsērunt ut domō exirent. 3. Caesar Britannis victis satis se effecisse arbitrātus est. 4. Militēs satis se effectūrōs¹ existimābant si pugnā hostēs vincerent. 5. Hostēs turri occupatā etiam ad castrōrum portam ire contendērunt. 6. Aedui dixerunt se Caesaris imperia sustentūrōs esse si Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire prohiberet. 7. Galli, cum tēla āmisissent, dēditionem facere voluerunt. 8. Hōc Caesarī nūntiātō respondit si vellet Ariovistus in colloquium venire, veniret. 9. Hostibus acriter sub mūrō pugnantibus multī interfectī sunt. 10. Caesare imperātōre Rōmānī tōtius Galliae imperiō potiti sunt.

[Translate each sentence in at least two ways.]

II. 1. Since the tower was finished, he thought the camp was sufficiently fortified. 2. Since all hope was lost, they fled into the woods. 3. Leaving all their villages, the Helvetians tried to make a journey through the

¹ In indirect discourse the *esse* of fut. inf. is often omitted.

territory of the Sequanians. 4. He persuaded the citizens to leave the towns and hasten into the provinces. 5. Even though their javelins were lost, nevertheless they fought long and sharply with their swords. 6. We have learned¹ that when Gaul had been conquered by Cæsar, the Britons lived long under the power of the Roman people. 7. Thinking that enough had been accomplished, since the towers and the gates had been finished, he returned with his legions into the camp. 8. When Cæsar wished to return to Rome, after finishing the war, he left the cohorts in winter quarters. 9. I do not think that the general will return to the city if the legions are lost. 10. Even if the Britons should wish to fight after the loss of their leaders, the magistrates would persuade them to remain in their fortifications.



CHAPTER LXIII.

Gerund and Gerundive.

368. Learn the gerund and gerundive of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *eō*.

Notice that the gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the second declension, lacking the nominative and vocative cases, and that the gerundive is declined as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

The gerund is an *active verbal noun*, the gerundive a *passive verbal adjective*.

¹ Use *cognōscō*.

369. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

GEN. **MILITĒS** pugnandī finem fēcērunt, *the soldiers made an end of fighting.*

DAT. **Locus** pugnandō¹ idōneus erat, *the place was suitable for fighting.*

ACC. **Nostrī** ad pugnandum convēnērunt, *our men assembled for fighting (to fight).*

ABL. **MILITĒS** pugnandō fortēs fiunt, *soldiers are made brave by fighting.*

Notice that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *-ing*. The accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions, usually to express purpose. Instead of the nominative and accusative (without a preposition) of the gerund, the infinitive is used; as, **vidēre est crēdere**, *seeing is believing*; **dicit vidēre esse crēdere**, *he says that seeing is believing.*

370. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

GEN. **Potestās** urbem capiendī datur, *an opportunity of taking the city is offered.*

DAT. **Est** dux idōneus urbem capiendō (rare), *he is a leader suitable for taking a city.*

ACC. **Vēnērunt** ad urbem capiendum (rare); *they came to take (for taking) the city.*

ABL. **Cōgitāmus** dē urbem capiendō (rare), *we are thinking about taking the city.*

Notice that in the above sentences the gerund, while having the uses and relations of a noun, takes an object like a transitive verb.

Except in the genitive case a gerund with a direct object is rare.

The same meaning is expressed by the gerundive construction as illustrated below.

¹ After **idōneus** the gerund is usually in the accusative with **ad**.

	GERUND CONSTRUCTION.	GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.
GEN. Potestās datur	{ urbem } { capiendī, }	urbis capiendae.
DAT. Est dux idōneus	{ urbem } { capiendō, }	urbī capiendae.
ACC. Vēnērunt	{ ad urbem } { capiendum, }	ad urbem capiendam.
ABL. Cōgitāmus	{ dē urbem } { capiendō, }	dē urbe capiendā.

Notice that the gerund construction may be changed to the gerundive by putting the object in the case of the gerund and using the gerundive in agreement with it.

Both constructions are admissible in the genitive,—in the other cases the gerundive is usual. Another use of the gerundive will be found later (388–390).

371. RULE. — *The gerund is, as a noun, governed by other words; as a verb, it may take an object in the proper case.*

Notice that the gerundive agrees with its noun like any other adjective. The noun itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

It is only when the gerund would take an object in the accusative that the gerundive can be used instead. The two constructions are both admissible in the genitive; in the other cases, the gerundive is usual.

372. RULE. — *Instead of the gerund with a direct object, the gerundive is generally used. The gerundive agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun, which stands in the case in which the gerund would have been.*

373.

VOCABULARY.

apertus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , open, [<i>perf. pass. partic. of aper-</i> <i>riō</i> , open].	ibī , <i>adv.</i> , there.
cōnsistō , cōnsistere, cōstiti, <i>no supine</i> , stand together, stand firm, stop, halt, [cōn + sistō (<i>reduplicated form</i> <i>from stō</i> , stand)].	imperō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, com- mand, order, <i>used with the</i> <i>dat. of the person to whom</i> <i>the command is given followed</i> <i>by ut or nē with the subjunc-</i> <i>tive.</i>
cōnspicuō , -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, spy, see, behold, [con + spic (<i>for spec</i> , a <i>root denoting sight</i>) + iō].	retineō , -ēre, -tīnuī, -tentum, hold back, retain, [re, back ; teneō, hold].
	scūtum , -i, n., shield.

374.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Scūtis āmissis tamen cōstitērunt ad portam dēfendendam. 2. Dixērunt ibi sē mānsūrōs esse ubi ad castra dēfendenda cōstitissēt. 3. Centuriōnibus imperāvit ut dē turribus cōficiendīs cōgitārent. 4. Amicō nostrō persuādeāmus nē spem oppidī capiendī āmittat. 5. Satis effectum esse arbitror sī lēgātī ad pācem petendam missi sunt. 6. Cum nostrōs ad pugnam convenientēs cōspexissent, tempus pugnandī vēnisse existimāvērunt. 7. Etiam sub imperiō Populī Rōmānī, Galli retinērī nōn poterant nē inter sē contenderent. 8. His rēbus factis nostrī ad flūmen trānseundum profecti sunt. 9. Helvētiī dē itinere per Sēquanōrum finēs faciendō ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. 10. His ille respondit sē nulli potestātem itineris per prōvinciam faciendī datūrum esse.

II. 1. This place is not suitable for fortifying¹ a camp. 2. When the gate was opened, he commanded us to go against the enemy. 3. Having seized the mountain, they halted there to wait (for waiting) for the general.

¹ See foot-note, p 186.

4. When they beheld the legions going out from the camp, they thought that an opportunity of making an attack was offered (given). 5. They placed towers at the gates for defending the town. 6. Although all hope of taking the town was lost, still they did not flee, but remained there all night. 7. When the general commanded them to halt there, they did not obey the command. 8. He said many things about taking cities and conquering enemies. 9. If you should say anything about making peace, you would lose the friendship of the consul. 10. Cæsar crossed into Britain to find out (for finding out) the customs of the Britons.

375.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 52, 53.]

Caesar à dextrō cornū, quod (*because*) eam partem minimē firmam (*strong*) hostium animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita ācrit̄er nostrī in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt itaque celeriter hostēs prōcurrērunt (*ran forward*) ut spatium (*room, space*) pila in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Gladiis pugnātum est diū atque ācrit̄er. Tandem (*at length*) Germānī victī fūgērunt, neque prius¹ fugere dēstitērunt (perf. of *dēsistō, cease*) quam¹ ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi pauci flūmine trānsitō sibi salutem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus. Reliquōs omnēs equitātus noster interfēcit. Duæ fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, quae in eā fugā periērunt (*perished*). Duārum filiārum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā traherētur (*trahō, -ere, drag*) in ipsum Caesarem incidit, et Mārcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus (*brought back*) est.

¹ prius . . . quam, sooner . . . than, i.e. until.

CHAPTER LXIV.

Supine.

Expressions of Purpose.

376. Learn the supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

377. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

vēnērunt aquam petītum, *they came to seek water.*

missus est rem renūtiātum, *he was sent to report the matter.*

378. RULE. — *The supine in -um (accusative supine) is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

NOTE. — The most frequent use of the supine in **-um** is with the verb **eō**, especially with the impersonal infinitive passive; as, **amātum iri**. This is the simplest way of forming the future infinitive passive. (For a more usual way of expressing the idea of the future infinitive passive, see the following chapter.)

379. Other ways of expressing purpose have already been given. *They came to seek water* may be expressed as follows:—

vēnērunt ut aquam peterent (*ut* and the subjunctive, **311**).

vēnērunt quī aquam peterent (relative and the subjunctive, **311**).

vēnērunt ad aquam petendam (gerundive with *ad*, **370**).

vēnērunt aquam petītum (accusative supine as above).

Instead of the gerundive with *ad* the gerund may be used, but only when the verb is intransitive; as, **vēnērunt ad mihi respondendum**, *they came to reply to me.*

380. Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund or gerundive in the genitive followed by *causā* (or *grātiā*), *for the sake*:—

vēnērunt aquam petendī causā (*grātiā*).

vēnērunt aquae petendae causā (*grātiā*).

Causā and **grātiā** are the ablatives of **causa**, *cause*, and **grātia**, *favor, influence*. They are used with the genitive as prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative, but when so used they are *always placed after the genitive*.

381. The future participle is also occasionally used to express purpose; as, **vērērunt aquam petītūrī**, *they came about to seek water, i.e. they came to seek water*.

What are eight ways of expressing purpose in Latin?

382. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

facile est factū, *it is easy to do*.

difficile est dictū, *it is hard to tell*.

383. RULE. — *The supine in -ū (ablative supine) is used with adjectives (and a few other words) to limit their meaning.*

384. VOCABULARY.

grātia, -ae, *f.*, influence, favor
(*abl. grātiā* for the sake,
with *gen. like causā*).

quantus, -a, -um, *adj., rel. and*
inter., how great.

animadvertō, -ere, -i, -sum,
notice, perceive, [*anim* (of
animus) + *ad* + *vertō* (turn),
turn the mind to].

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,
throw together, hurl together,
[*con* + *iaciō*].

pellō, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*,
repel, repulse, defeat.

nam, *conj.*, for.

quidem, indeed, at least, *espe-*
cially nē . . . **quidem**, not
even.

385. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Hōc animadversō Caesar imperāvit ut ibi cōsisterent.** 2. **Incrēdibile dictū est quantā celeritāte ad tēla conicienda convēnerint.** 3. **Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs plūrimum valēbat grātiā et animī magnitudīne, nam nihil esse arbitrātī sunt quod efficere nōn posset.** 4. **Gallī**

nē scūtīs quidem āmissīs omnem spem āmisērunt. 5. Helvētīī proeliō pulsī lēgātōs ad Caesarem pācem petītum misērunt. 6. Cum Procillum venientem cōspexisset portā apertā ad eum contendit. 7. Lēgātōs, quī ad pācem petendam vēnerant, apud sē retinuit nē domum reverterentur. 8. Nam verēbātur nē, sī domum revertissent, Gallīs persuādērent ut ad impetum in castra faciendum convenīrent. 9. Mihi quidem satis erit sī bene ac celeriter eās rēs cōnfēcēritis ad quās cōficiendās vōs convocāvī. 10. Hoc sī optimum factū est faciāmus. 11. Haec quidem dicere volēbam ut intellegerētis. Sed satis dictum est.

[Translate the purpose clauses in various ways.]

II. 1. Let us go to seek aid. I think this is the best (thing) to do. 2. When he had noticed that the Gauls had hurled their javelins, he ordered his (men) to make a charge. 3. Not even when the enemy were repulsed did he dare to halt there. 4. When the leaders of the enemy perceived this, they encouraged (strengthened the spirits of) their men to fight. 5. We have come to you, not to fight, but to make peace. 6. Caesar had great influence among the Gauls, for they understood how great his power was. 7. Those who had been sent to learn the nature of the place, reported that it was suitable for making a camp. 8. Scouts came for the purpose of seeing the army and reporting to their chiefs. 9. Having noticed this, Caesar retained them in the camp. 10. Envoys were sent to the general to seek peace, in order to put (make) an end to (of) the war. 11. The general replied to them that he had come to conquer the Gauls. 12. Having heard this, the chiefs of the Gauls called their (men) together and encouraged them to fight.

CHAPTER LXV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

*Dative of Agent.***386.** Examine the following:—

PRES.	amātūrus sum , <i>I am about to love (or, I am going to love).</i>
IMPERF.	amātūrus eram , <i>I was about to love.</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō , <i>I shall be about to love.</i>
PERF.	amātūrus fui , <i>I have been (was) about to love.</i>
PLUPERF.	amātūrus fueram , <i>I had been about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	amātūrus fuerō , <i>I shall have been about to love.</i>

The future active participle is combined in this way with all the moods and tenses of *sum*. The combination is called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation*. The tenses are called *present*, *imperfect*, etc., according to the tense of *sum* employed.

The future active participle of any verb, with the present indicative of *sum*, has substantially the same meaning as the future active indicative. The two expressions, *amābō* and *amātūrus sum*, are equivalents. But for the other forms given above, there are no simple equivalents.

387. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

nōn dubitō quā amātūrus sit, *I do not doubt that he will (is about to) love.*
quaesivī quid factūrus esset, *I asked what he was going to do.*

Notice that the First Periphrastic Conjugation supplies a future tense for the subjunctive mood.

The regular future active infinitive (as *amātūrus esse*) is evidently a part of the First Periphrastic Conjugation, being formed of the future active participle and the infinitive of *sum*.

The future passive infinitive is also frequently formed with the aid of *sum*. For this purpose, the future infinitive of *sum* is used; but the form employed is almost invariably *fore*, not *futūrum esse*. When thus used, *fore* is followed by *ut* and the subjunctive; *as*, —

orēdō fore ut amētur, *I believe that he will be loved (that it will be or will come to pass that he is loved).*

putābam fore ut liber scriberētur, *I thought that the book would be written (that it would be or would come to pass that the book was written).*

The future infinitive passive in Indirect Discourse is usually formed in this way.

388. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRES. *amandus sum*, *I am to be loved, I ought to (must) be loved, it is necessary that I be loved.*

IMPERF. *amandus eram*, *I was to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

FUT. *amandus erō*, *I ought (hereafter) to be loved, it will be necessary that I be loved.*

PERF. *amandus fui*, *I have been (was) to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

The other moods (except the imperative) and tenses of *sum* are also used in combination with the gerundive, forming the *Second Periphrastic Conjugation*.

Observe that the Second Periphrastic Conjugation is *passive*, and involves the idea of *necessity* or *obligation*.

389. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

hoc mihi faciendum est, *this must be done by me*, or *I must do this*.

intellēxit pontem sibi faciendum esse, *he understood that a bridge must be built by him*, or *that he must build a bridge*.

Observe that the person by whom the action is to be performed is put in the dative. This is called the *dative of agent*.

390. RULE.—*With the gerundive expressing obligation, the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests, instead of an ablative of agent.*

391. VOCABULARY.

autem, *conj.*, but, however, (*the second word in its clause*).

coepī, **coepisse**, began (*only the tenses formed from the perfect stem exist*), followed by the infinitive.

cōnsuēscō, **-suēscere**, **-suēvī**, **-suētum**, become accustomed, (*perf. be accustomed*).

dēmōnstrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, show, explain, demonstrate, [**dē** + **mōnstrō**, show].

ēgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum**, go out, come out, [**ē** + **gredior** (*for gradior*, step, go)].

fortūna, **-ae**, *f.*, fortune.

prōgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum**, go forward, advance, [**prō** + **gradior**].

trādō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, give over, hand over, give up, [**trā** (*for trāns*, across or over) + a shortened form of **da**, the root of **dō**, give].

392. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Ibi nobīs cōsistendum est ubi imperātor ut cōsistāmus imperat.** 2. **Imperāvit autem ut sub mūrō cōsisterēmus, nam animadverterat hostēs prōgressūrōs esse.** 3. **Portā ad ēgrediendum apertā, tamen militēs in castrīs retinuit.** 4. **Scūta et pīla nostra trādenda sunt, animōs autem semper retinēbimus.** 5. **Ibi multis lapidibus in ūnum locum coniectīs mūrū facere coepērunt.**

6. Omnia dēmōnstrāvi quae mihi dēmōnstranda erant. 7. Quaesīvit num militēs quōs in silvā cōspexisset ēgres-sūrī essent. 8. Helvētiī quidem pulsī sunt, Germānī au-tem vincendī sunt. 9. Discipulis multa facienda sunt ad grātiā apud magistrum petendam. 10. Dixit fore ut castra trāderentur, cum militēs pulsī essent. 11. Intelle-gendum est quanta fortūnae sit potestās. 12. Quaerō quid factūrī sītis ut apud civēs grātiā valeātis. 13. Cōn-suēscunt hominēs multa facere quae facienda nōn sunt. 14. Ducī militum animī ad pugnandum cōnfirmandī sunt.

II. 1. The Britons were accustomed to choose leaders when they were about to go out from their territories. 2. Influence and power ought to be sought, but friendship is better. 3. I do not doubt that the enemy will advance with great spirit. 4. Since the enemy have begun to build (*make*) a wall, we must go out against them. 5. You say that you have come to seek peace, but peace must not be made unless you give up (your) arms. 6. Cæsar shows in the first book with what great (how) great) peoples he had to fight (it was to be fought by him). 7. When the general perceived the shields of the enemy in the wood, he understood that he must go out to fight. 8. Not even his enemies doubt that Cæsar will conquer the Gauls. 9. We must throw all our shields together in (to) one place, but must retain our swords in our hands. 10. You must not go out; for your father ordered you to remain at home.

393.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gaulic War*, Book I. 54.]

Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī (*Suebi*, a German tribe) quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum re-

verti coepērunt, quōs Ubiī (another tribe), qui proximi Rhēnum¹ incolunt, territōs secūtī, magnum ex his numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō (*a little*) quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit (*led away*); hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem (*nearer*²) Galliam ad conventūs (*circuit courts*³) agendōs profectus est.

¹ Rhēnum : the accusative is often used after **proximus**.

² *Nearer*, or *Hither Gaul* was Gaul nearer Rome; *i.e.* the northern part of what is now Italy.

³ Cæsar was governor of Gaul, and holding courts was one of his duties.



ROMAN CAVALRY.
(From the Column of Trajan.)



ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

READING LESSONS.

[Adapted to the chapter indicated in parenthesis.]

394. *The Evils of War.* (XII.)

Nōnne bellum semper malum est? Semper malum est. Cūr (*why*) malum est? Nōnne militibus et ducibus (*leaders*) voluptātem parat? Nōn semper militibus voluptātem parat, et fēminis magnum parat dolōrem (*grief*). Saepe enim (*for*) matrēs filiōs, sorōrēs frātrēs (*brothers*), virginēs amātōrēs (*lovers*) amittunt (*lose*). Et milites ipsi (*themselves*) saepe aegri (*sick*) ē bellō in patriam revertunt (*return*).

395. *Variety the Spice of Life.* (XVI.)

Puerī, ubi erātis herī (*yesterday*)? In silvā erāmus. Cūr in scholā (*school*) nōn erātis? In scholā nōn erāmus quod (*because*) magister aeger (*sick*) erat. Num laetī erātis quod magister aeger erat? Nōn hāc (*this*) dē (*for*) causā (*reason*) laetī erāmus, sed quod ē scholā liberī erāmus. Nōnne scholam amātis? Sāne (*yes*), amāmus scholam, sed cottidiē in scholam imus (*we go*). Itaque (*therefore*) herī in silvā errāre (*to wander*) nobis (*to us*) grātum erat. Intellegō (*I understand*). Varietās (*variety*) vitam (*life*) iūcundam (*pleasant*) facit.

396. *Horace and the Apples.* (XX.)

Horātius, agricolae filius, bonus erat puer, sed malōs amicōs amābat. Agricola igitur (*therefore*) puerō cala-

thum (*basket*) pōmōrum (*apples*) plēnum (*full*) dat. Bona erant in calathō pōma, pauca (*a few*) tamen (*nevertheless*) erant putrida (*rotten*). Puer dōnum magnā cum diligentiā cūrābat (*cared for*), sed mala pōma maculābant (*spotted*) bona. Tum agricola filiō dicit (*says*): "Pōma mala maculant bona; certē (*surely*) amīci malī bonum maculābunt puerum."

397. *Alexander and Bucephalus.* (XXIV.)

Alexander (*Alexander*) filius erat Philippī (*Philip*) rēgis Macedonum (*Macedonians*). Iuvenis erat magnā vī corporis et magnā virtūte. Magnus et validus (*strong*) equus quem (*which*) nēmō (*no one*) ex omnibus rēgis equitibus vincere (*conquer*) potuerat (*had been able*) ab Alexandrō iuvene domitus (*overcome*) est. Hic (*this*) equus, cui (*whose*) nōmen erat Būcephalus, ab Alexandrō semper maximē (*very much*) amābātur. Post (*after*) Philippī mortem (*death*) Alexander magnis bellis Graecōs et Persās (*Persians*) superāvit. In omnibus proeliis in Bucephalō equō sedēbat (*sat, rode*).

398. *The Founding of Rome.* (XXVIII.)

Rōmulus (*Romulus*) cum Remō (*Remus*) frātre urbem Rōmam (*Rome*) in ripā (*bank*) flūminis Tiberis (*the Tiber*) condidit (*founded*). Novam urbem parvō mūrō Rōmulus circumdedit (*surrounded*). Remus parvum Rōmulī mūrū trānsiluit (*jumped over*); quō (*at which*) irātus (*angry*) Rōmulus frātre necāvit. Ita (*so*) Rōmulus primus Rōmae rēx erat. Post (*after*) Rōmulum sex (*six*) rēgēs erant. Post septem (*seven*) rēgēs cōsulibus summa in civitāte (*state*) potestās atque auctōritās (*authority*) a civibus data est.

ADDITIONAL READING LESSONS.

[To be used with the later chapters of the book.]

399.

Respect to Age.

Lysander Lacedaemonius hoc dixisse dicitur: "Lacedaemone¹ optimē vivere possunt senēs. Nusquam enim tantam habent auctoritatem." Athēnis olim lūdis institūtis² quidam in theātrum senex vēnit, nec ei locus datus est ā suis civibus; tum ad lēgātōs Lacedaemoniōs accēssit; hī autem omnēs cōsurrēxere et senī locum dedērunt. Hoc factum probantibus³ Athēniēnsibus, ūnus ē lēgātis⁴ dixit, "Athēniēnsēs sciunt quidem rēcta facere, sed facere nōlunt."

¹ *At Lacedaemon.* ² Here *lūdis institūtis*, when a play was to be given. ³ *Approving* (pres. part. of *probō*, 1). ⁴ Instead of the partitive genitive, the abl. with *ē* or *ex* may be used.

400.

An Honorable People.

Themistoclēs olim pugnā nāvālī victis Persis Athēnis apud conciōnem dixit: "Cōnsilium in animō habeo: hoc ūtile reipublicae erit, cēlārī tamen oportet. Unī ē primōribus rem dicere volō." Aristidēs ad hoc mūnus dēlēctus est. Huic dixit Themistoclēs: "Lacedaemoniōrum classis in ancoris in portū est. Hanc clam incendere poterimus. Ita illōrum potestās nāvālis dēlēbitur." His

audītis Aristīdēs reversus apud conciōnem dīxit: "Themistoclis cōsilium ūtile quidem, sed minimē honestum est." Itaque Athēniēnsēs nē audītum quidem cōsilium sprēverunt.

401. *The Ass and the Wolf.*

Ad asinum gravī morbō aegrum socii vērunt, ut quid ageret¹ vidērent. Inter aliōs lupus quoque vēnit. Qui cum corpus eius tangeret, et interrogāvisset, quae corporis partēs maximē dolērent, asinus respondit: "Eae partēs corporis maximē dolent, quās tū tangis."

¹ What he was doing, i.e. how he did.

402. *Cæsar's Second Invasion of Britain.*

[Extracts from CÆSAR'S *Gaulic War*, Book V.]

NOTE. When Cæsar was about to cross into Britain, Dumnorix whom he did not wish to leave in Gaul for fear that he might instigate an uprising, secretly withdrew with the Æduan cavalry from Cæsar's camp. When this was reported to Cæsar he ordered him to be followed and brought back with the Æduan cavalry.

1. (VIII.) His rēbus¹ gestis, Labiēnō² in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur,³ et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur⁴ cognōsceret, cōsiliumque prō tempore⁵ et prō rē caperet, ipse⁶ cum quinque legiōnibus, et pari numerō⁷ equitum, quem in continentī relinquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Africō provēctus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et, longius⁸ dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce,⁹ sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs, commūtatiōnem secūtus,¹⁰ remīs contendit ut eam partem Insulae caperet, quā¹¹ optimum esse ēgressum su-

periōre aetate cognoverat. Accessum¹² est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus¹³ meridiānō ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cognovit, cum¹⁴ magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudine nāvium perterritae, ā litore discēsserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

1. ¹ Things mentioned in the preceding chapter. ² Labiēnō relictō. Observe the frequent use of the abl. abs. (462). ³ Ut . . . tuērētur, prōvidēret, cognōsceret, caperet, to protect, etc. ⁴ Quae gererentur. Indirect question after cognōsceret. ⁵ Prō tempore et prō rē, according to the time and the thing, i.e. as the time and the circumstances may require. ⁶ Himself, i.e. Caesar from the preceding chapter. ⁷ An equal number which, i.e. a number equal to that which. ⁸ Too far. ⁹ When day broke, or at daybreak. Literally what? ¹⁰ Taking advantage of a change, literally following. The perf. part. of a deponent is frequently translated like a present part. ¹¹ Where. ¹² They approached. Literally what? ¹³ Manner (456). ¹⁴ Concessive.

2. (IX.) Caesar expositō exercitū¹ et locō¹ castris² idōneō captō, ubi ex captivīs cognovit quō³ in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc quī⁴ praesidiō nāvibus⁵ essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, et praesidiō nāvibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illi equitātū⁶ atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdiderunt locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domesticī belli⁷ ut vidēbantur⁸ causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crebris arboribus succēsis⁹ omnēs introitus erant praelūsī. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant, nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs

legiōnis vii testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs ad-
jectō locum cēperunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis
vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar
prosequi¹⁰ vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod
magnā parte diēi cōsumptā mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus
relinqui¹¹ volēbat.

2. ¹ Abl. abs. ² Castris, dat. ³ Quō in locō cōnsēdis-
sent. Indirect question after cognōvit. ⁴ Qui essent. Purpose.
⁵ Praesidiō nāvibus. Two datives (446). ⁶ Equitātū, with cav-
alry. Abl. of instrument with prohibēre and committere rather
than prōgressū. ⁷ Belli depends on causā. ⁸ Ut vidēbantur,
as they seemed instead of the impersonal as it seemed. ⁹ Abl. abs.,
expressing means. ¹⁰ 476. 2. ¹¹ 476. 3.

3. (X.) Postridiē eius diēi manē tripertitō milites equi-
tēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fūgerant perse-
querentur. His aliquantum¹ itineris prōgressis, cum iam
extrēmī essent in prospectū, equitēs ā Quintō Atriō ad Cae-
sarem vērunt qui nūntiārent² superiōre nocte maximā
coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs adflētās atque in
litore ēiectās esse.

3. ¹ Aliquantum itineris, some distance. ² Qui nūntiārent.
Subjunctive of purpose.

4. (XI.) His rēbus cognitīs, Caesar legiōnēs equitā-
tumque revocārī atque in itinere dēsistere iubet; ipse ad
nāvēs revertitur: eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis litterisque
cognōverat, coram perspicit, sic ut, āmissis circiter xl
nāvibus, reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negotiō¹
vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit, et ex
continenti aliōs arcessi iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam
plūrimās² posset,³ iis legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum,
nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac
labōris, tamen commodissimum esse⁴ statuit, omnēs

nāvēs subdūcī⁵ et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungi.⁵ In his rēbus circiter diēs decem cōsūmit. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis, eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus reliquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellique administrandi,⁶ cōmūnī cōsiliō, permissā Cassivellaunō, cuius finēs ā maritimis civitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter milia passuum LXXX.

4. ¹ Magnō negōtiō, *with great trouble.* ² Plūrimās agrees with nāvēs. ³ Quam plūrimās posset, *as many as he could.* ⁴ Esse is in indirect discourse after statuit. ⁵ Subdūcī and coniungi are subjects of esse. ⁶ Summā imperiī bellique administrandi, *the chief command and management of the war.* Literally, *the chief of command and of the war to be managed.* Summā . . . permissā, abl. abs.

5. (XVIII.) Caesar cognitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs¹ Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit, quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus² atque hōc aegrē trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad³ alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse⁴ cōpiās hostium instructās: rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixisque⁵ mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine⁶ tegēbantur. His rēbus cognitīs ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iūssit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū milites ierunt, cum⁷ capite sōlō⁸ ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

5. ¹ To the river Thames into the territory of C. We should say in the territory of C., though Cæsar spoke of the Thames as the boundary of the territory of C. (4.). ² Pedibus, *on foot*, i.e. the

river was fordable. ³ *Ad, near, in the vicinity of.* ⁴ In indirect discourse after *animum advertit*, used like *animadvertit*. ⁵ *Que* connects *acūtis* and *præfixis*. ⁶ *Abl. of means.* ⁷ *Concessive.* ⁸ *By the head only.* Degree of difference.

6. (XIX.) Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omni dēpositā spē contēntiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter iv essedariōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat, locisque¹ impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat, atque iis regiōnibus,¹ quibus nōs iter factūrōs² cognōverat pecora, atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius³ praedandī vastandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcērat, omnibus viis sēmitisque⁴ essedariōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et magnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum iis cōfigēbat, atque hōc metū⁵ lātius vagārī⁶ prohibēbat.

6. ¹ Place as means does not require a prep. *Loco* is often used without *in* when it expresses place where. ² *Factūrōs (esse)*, ind. dis. with *cognōverat*. ³ *More freely* (than was prudent). ⁴ *By all roads and paths.* ⁵ *By this fear*, i.e. by fear of such tactics. ⁶ *Lātius vagārī*, from straggling too far. Infinitive depending upon *prohibēbat*, instead of subj. with *nē*.

7. (XX.) Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvītās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns, Caesaris fidem secūtus,¹ ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, — cuius pater [Imanuentius] in eā cīvītate rēgnū obtinuerat, interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō; ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, — legātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs² atque imperāta factūrōs²: petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat,³ atque in cīvītatem mittat,³ quī praesit⁴ imperiumque obtineat. His⁵ Caesar imperat obsidēs xl frūmentumque

exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

7. ¹ Fidem secutus, *surrendering to, attaching himself to Caesar.*
² Sese dedituros (esse), facturös (esse), in ind. dis. ³ Purpose (476. 1). ⁴ Purpose (476). ⁵ His . . . imperat, *orders from them, i.e. orders them to furnish.* His is dat., denoting those to whom the order was given.

8. (XXI.) Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Icani, Cangi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesari dederunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum, quo¹ satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum² autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallö atque fossa munierunt, quo¹ incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consueverunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie naturä atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiacerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus; multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

8. ¹ Adv., *whither, into which.* ² But a town the Britons call (it) *when.*

9. (XXII.) Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus¹ quattuor reges praeerant, nationes mittit, atque his imperat uti,² coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improvisö adorianur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis

eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili ducē Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditionē ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat.

9. ¹ *Regiōnibus*. Dative with *praeerant*. ² *Uti*, another form of *ut*, introducing *adoriantur*.

10. (XXIII.) *Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, nē anni tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, militēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, nāvēs perdūxit.*



THE SUBJECTION OF GAUL.

NOUNS.

403. The terminations of the several declensions (not including Greek forms which will occur in other books) are the following:—

	DECL. I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
	SINGULAR.				
<i>N.</i>	-a	-us, -um, —	-s (-is)	-us, -ū	-ēs
<i>G.</i>	-ae	-ī	-is	-ūs	-ēī
<i>D.</i>	-ae	-ō	-ī	-uī (-ū)	-ēī
<i>Ac.</i>	-am	-um	-em, (-im)	-um, -ū	-em
<i>V.</i>	-a	-e, —	(as nom.)	-us, -ū	-ēs
<i>Ab.</i>	-ā	-ō	-e (-ī)	-ū	-ē
	PLURAL.				
<i>N., V.</i>	-ae	-ī, -a	-ēs	-ūs, -ua	-ēs
<i>G.</i>	-ārum	-ōrum	-um, -ium	-uum	-ērum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	-īs (-ābus)	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
<i>Ac.</i>	-ās	-ōs, -a	-ēs, -īs	-ūs, -ua	-ēs

404. First or *a*-Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N.</i>	<i>mēnsa, a table.</i>	<i>mēnsae, tables.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mēnsae, of a table.</i>	<i>mēnsārum, of tables.</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mēnsae, to or for a table.</i>	<i>mēnsīs, to or for tables.</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mēnsam, table.</i>	<i>mēnsās, tables.</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>mēnsa, thou table.</i>	<i>mēnsae, ye tables.</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mēnsā, from, by, with, etc., a table.</i>	<i>mēnsīs, from, by, with, etc., tables.</i>

405. Second or o-Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N.</i>	servus	servi	bellum	bella
<i>G.</i>	servi	servōrum	belli	bellōrum
<i>D.</i>	servō	servis	bellō	bellis
<i>Ac.</i>	servum	servos	bellum	bella
<i>V.</i>	serve	servi	bellum	bella
<i>Ab.</i>	servō	servis	bellō	bellis

	SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i>	puer	ager	vir
<i>G.</i>	pueri	agri	viri
<i>D.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Ac.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum
<i>V.</i>	puer	ager	vir
<i>Ab.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō

	PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	pueri	agri	viri
<i>G.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>D.</i>	pueris	agris	viris
<i>Ac.</i>	pueros	agros	viros
<i>V.</i>	pueri	agri	viri
<i>Ab.</i>	pueris	agris	viris

406. Third Declension.*Mute Stems.*

	SINGULAR.		
<i>N., V.</i>	princeps	rēx	mīlēs
<i>G.</i>	principis	rēgis	militis
<i>D.</i>	principi	rēgi	militi
<i>Ac.</i>	principem	rēgem	militem
<i>Ab.</i>	principe	rēge	milite

	caput
	capitis
	capiti
	caput
	capite

PLURAL.

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>principēs</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>principum</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>capitum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>principibus</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

SINGULAR.

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>voluptās</i>	<i>pēs</i>	<i>cūstōs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>voluptātis</i>	<i>pedis</i>	<i>cūstōdis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>voluptātī</i>	<i>pedī</i>	<i>cūstōdī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>voluptātem</i>	<i>pedem</i>	<i>cūstōdem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>voluptāte</i>	<i>pede</i>	<i>cūstōde</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>voluptātēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>	<i>cūstōdēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>voluptātum</i>	<i>pedum</i>	<i>cūstōdum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>voluptātibus</i>	<i>pedibus</i>	<i>cūstōdibus</i>

Liquid Stems.

SINGULAR.

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>victōr</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>vulnus</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>victōris</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>vulneris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>cōsulī</i>	<i>victōrī</i>	<i>virginī</i>	<i>vulnerī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>victōrem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>vulnus</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>victōre</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>vulnere</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>vulnera</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>victōrum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>vulnerum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>victōribus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>vulneribus</i>

Stems in i.

		SINGULAR.		
	✓			
<i>N., V.</i>	ignis		hostis	caedēs ✓
<i>G.</i>	ignis		hostis	caedis
<i>D.</i>	igni		hosti	caedi
<i>Ac.</i>	ignem		hostem	caedem
<i>Ab.</i>	igni, -e		hoste	caede
		PLURAL.		
<i>N., V.</i>	ignēs		hostēs	caedēs
<i>G.</i>	ignium		hostium	caedium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	ignibus		hostibus	caedibus
<i>Ac.</i>	ignēs, -is		hostēs, -is	caedēs, -is
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	mare ✓	maria	animal	animālīa
<i>G.</i>	maris	marium	animālīs	animālīum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	marī	maribus	animālī	animālībūs

Mixed Stems.

		SINGULAR.		
<i>N., V.</i>	nox		urbs	mōns
<i>G.</i>	noctis		urbis	montis
<i>D.</i>	nocti		urbi	monti
<i>Ac.</i>	noctem		urbem	montem
<i>Ab.</i>	nocte		urbe	monte
		PLURAL.		
<i>N., V.</i>	noctēs		urbēs	montēs
<i>G.</i>	noctium		urbium	montium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	noctibus		urbibus	montibus
<i>Ac.</i>	noctēs, -is		urbēs, -is	montēs, -is

407. Fourth or *u*-Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercitui (-ū)	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

408. Fifth or *e*-Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>G.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>D.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Ac.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Ab.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES.

409. First and Second Declension.

SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>G.</i> boni	bonae	boni
<i>D.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Ac.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>V.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Ab.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō

			PLURAL.
<i>N.</i> boni	bonae	bona	
<i>G.</i> bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum	
<i>D.</i> bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	
<i>Ac.</i> bonōs	bonās	bona	
<i>V.</i> bonī	bonae	bona	
<i>Ab.</i> bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	

			SINGULAR.
<i>N.</i> miser	miserā	miserum	
<i>G.</i> miserī	miserāe	miseri	
<i>D.</i> miserō	miserāe	miserō	
<i>Ac.</i> miserum	miseram	miserum	
<i>V.</i> miser	miserā	miserum	
<i>Ab.</i> miserō	miserā	miserō	

			PLURAL.
<i>N.</i> miserī	miserāe	miserā	
<i>G.</i> miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum	
<i>D.</i> miseris	miseris	miseris	
<i>Ac.</i> miserōs	miserās	miserā	
<i>V.</i> miserī	miserāe	miserā	
<i>Ab.</i> miseris	miseris	miseris	

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>G.</i> pulchri	pulchrae	pulchri
<i>D.</i> pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Ac.</i> pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>V.</i> pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Ab.</i> pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>G.</i> pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>D.</i> pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
<i>Ac.</i> pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>V.</i> pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Ab.</i> pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

410. Adjectives of Third Declension.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i> ācer	āceris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere	celere
<i>G.</i> ācris	ācris	ācris	celeri	celeris	celeri	celeri
<i>D., Ab.</i> ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	celerem	celerem	celerem	celerem
<i>Ac.</i> ācrem	ācrem	ācre				

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i> ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria	celeria
<i>G.</i> ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	celerium	celerium	celerium	celerium
<i>D., Ab.</i> ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
<i>Ac.</i> ācrēs (-is)	ācrēs (-is)	ācria	celerēs (-is)	celerēs (-is)	celeria	celeria

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i> brevis	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia	brevia	brevia
<i>G.</i> brevis	brevis	brevium	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus
<i>D., Ab.</i> brevī	brevī	brevēs (-is)	brevia	brevia	brevia	brevia
<i>Ac.</i> brevem	brevem					

SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.				
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	vēlōx		vēlōx		potēns		potēns
<i>G.</i>	vēlōcis		vēlōcis		potētis		potētis
<i>D.</i>	vēlōcī		vēlōcī		potētī		potētī
<i>Ac.</i>	vēlōcem		vēlōx		potentem		potēns
<i>Ab.</i>	vēlōcī (-e)		vēlōcī (-e)		potētī (-e)		potētī (-e)
PLURAL.				PLURAL.			
<i>N., V.</i>	vēlōcēs		vēlōcia		potentēs		potentia
<i>G.</i>	vēlōcium		vēlōcium		potentium		potentium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	vēlōcibus		vēlōcibus		potentibus		potentibus
<i>Ac.</i>	vēlōcēs (-is)		vēlōcia		potentēs (-is)		potentia

411. Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.				
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	cāriōr		cārius		cāriōrēs		cāriōra
<i>G.</i>	cāriōris		cāriōris		cāriōrum		cāriōrum
<i>D.</i>	cāriōri		cāriōri		cāriōribus		cāriōribus
<i>Ac.</i>	cāriōrem		cārius		cāriōrēs (-is)		cāriōra
<i>Ab.</i>	cāriōre (-i)		cāriōre (-i)		cāriōribus		cāriōribus

412. Irregular Adjectives.

SINGULAR.					
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>G.</i> alius	alius	alius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
<i>D.</i> alii	alii	alii	ūni	ūni	ūni
<i>Ac.</i> alium	aliā	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Ab.</i> aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural is regular.

✓ duo, two.			✓ trēs, three.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Ab. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

413. Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, <i>easy.</i>	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, <i>difficult.</i>	difficillior.	difficillimus.
similis, <i>like.</i>	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike.</i>	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
✓ gracilis, <i>slender.</i>	gracilior.	gracillimus.
✓ humilis, <i>low.</i>	humilior.	humillimus.
exterus, <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer or more outward.</i>	extrēmus and extimus, <i>outermost or last.</i>
inferus, <i>low.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	īnīmus and īmus, <i>lowest.</i>
posterus, <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus and postumus, <i>last.</i>
superus, <i>upper.</i>	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēmus and summus, <i>top of, highest.</i>
bonus, <i>good.</i>	melior, melius, <i>better.</i>	optimus, <i>best.</i>
malus, <i>bad.</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse.</i>	pessimus, <i>worst.</i>
magnus, <i>great.</i>	maior, māius, <i>greater.</i>	maximus, <i>greatest.</i>
multus, <i>much.</i>	—, plūs, ¹ <i>more.</i>	plūrimus, <i>most.</i>
multī, <i>many.</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more.</i>	plūrimī, <i>most.</i>
parvus, <i>small.</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller.</i>	minimus, <i>smallest.</i>
senex, <i>old.</i>	senior (māior nātū), <i>older, elder.</i>	maximus nātū, <i>oldest, eldest.</i>
iuvenis, <i>young.</i>	iūnior (minor nātū), <i>younger.</i>	minimus nātū, <i>youngest.</i>
prae, prō (prep., <i>before</i>).	prior, <i>former.</i>	prīmus, <i>first.</i>
prope (adv., <i>near</i>).	proplior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>nearest.</i>

¹ The neuter plūs, nom. and acc., and the gen. plūris, are the only forms used in the singular.

414. ADVERBS COMPARED IRREGULARLY.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
benē (from <i>bonus</i>), <i>well</i> .	melius.	optimē.
malē (from <i>malus</i>), <i>ill</i> .	peius.	possimē.
multum, <i>much</i> .	plus.	plurimē.
parum, <i>little</i> .	minus.	minimē.
diū, <i>long</i> .	diūtius.	diūtissimē.

A more complete list will be found in larger books.

↓ **415. CARDINAL NUMERALS.**

1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum	18. duodēvigintī	100. centum
2. duo, duae, duo	(octōdecim)	101. centum ūnus <i>or</i>
3. trēs, tria	19. ūndēvigintī	centum et ūnus
4. quattuor	(novendecim)	102. centum duo <i>or</i>
5. quinque	20. vigintī	centum et duo
6. sex	21. vigintī ūnus <i>or</i>	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
7. septem	ūnus et vigintī	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
8. octō	22. vigintī duo <i>or</i>	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
9. novem	duo et vigintī	500. quingentī, -ae, -a
10. decem	28. duodētrigintā	600. sescentī, -ae, -a
11. ūndecim	29. ūndētrigintā	700. septingentī, -ae, -a
12. duodecim	30. trigintā	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
13. tredecim	40. quadrāgintā	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
14. quattuordecim	50. quinquāgintā	1000. mille
15. quindecim	60. sexāgintā	2000. duo milia
16. sēdecim	70. septuāgintā	10,000. decem milia
17. septendecim	80. octōgintā	100,000. centum milia
	90. nōnāgintā	

416. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. primus	6th. sextus	10th. decimus
2d. secundus	7th. septimus	11th. ūndecimus
3d. tertius	8th. octāvus	12th. duodecimus
4th. quārtus	9th. nōnus	13th. tertius decimus
5th. quīntus		14th. quārtus decimus

15th. quintus decimus	30th. tricēsimus
16th. sextus decimus	40th. quadrāgēsimum
17th. septimus decimus	50th. quinquāgēsimum
18th. duodēvicēsimum	60th. sexāgēsimum
19th. undēvicēsimum	70th. septuāgēsimum
20th. vicēsimum	80th. octōgēsimum
21st. vicēsimum primus or unus	90th. nōnāgēsimum
et vicēsimum	100th. centēsimum
28th. duodētricēsimum	200th. ducentēsimum
29th. undētricēsimum	1000th. millēsimum

417. Personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.

N. egō, I.

G. mei, of me.

D. mihi (mī), to, for me.

Ac. mē, me.

Ab. mē, from, by, with, etc., me.

PLURAL.

nōs, we.

nostrum or nostri, of us.

nōbis, to, for us.

nōs, us.

nōbis, from, by, with, etc., us.

SECOND PERSON.

N., V. tū, (thou) you.

G. tui, of (thee) you.

D. tibi, to, for (thee) you.

Ac. tē, (thee) you.

*Ab. tē, from, by, with, etc.,
(thee) you.*

vōs, you.

vestrum or vestri, of you.

vōbis, to, for you.

vōs, you.

vōbis, from, by, with, etc., you.

THIRD PERSON.

Reflexive.

N. ———

*G. sui, of him(self), her(self),
it(self). sui, of them(selves).*

D. sibi, to, for him(self), etc. sibi, to, for them(selves).

Ac. sē, sēsē, him(self), etc. sē, sēsē, them(selves).

Ab. sē, sēsē, from, by, with, etc., him(self). sē, sēsē, from, by, with, etc., them(selves).

418. Demonstrative Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

	<i>hic, this.</i>			<i>ille, that.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

SINGULAR.

				PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (ī)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>	<i>eīs (īs)</i>

idem, same.

<i>N.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>(īdem)</i> <i>eaedem</i> <i>eadem</i>		
<i>G.</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>		
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>		

SINGULAR.

				PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

419.

Relative Pronoun.

quī, who, which.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
Ac. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

420.

Interrogative Pronoun.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae	
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
Ac. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

421.

Indefinite Pronoun.

	SINGULAR.		
N.	{ aliquis	aliquae }	aliquid
	{ aliqui	aliqua }	
G.		alicujus	
D.		alicui	
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid
Ab.	aliquo	aliqua	aliquo

	PLURAL.		
N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua	
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum	
D.	aliquibus		
Ac. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua	
Ab.	aliquibus		

MOODS AND TENSES.

422. The tenses of verbs in the indicative mood are generally translated by the corresponding tenses of the English, but it should be noticed that the imperfect is used to represent a continued, incompleted, or repeated action in past time (see paradigms and foot-note, p. 32), and that the perfect denotes either an act completed in the present time, and is then translated by the English perfect (with *have*), or an indefinite past act, when it is translated by the English past.

The translation of the various tenses of the other moods must be learned from the illustrative sentences where the various constructions containing them are first introduced.

REGULAR VERBS.

423. VERB-ENDINGS FORMED BY MOOD AND TENSE SIGNS COMBINED WITH THE PERSONAL ENDINGS.

[The letters in *italics* before the endings as printed below show the changes in the stem-vowels.]

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
<i>Indicative. Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative. Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative. Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative. Subjunctive.</i>

		PRESENT.			
		I. II. III. IV.			
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -ō	<i>-e -ea -a -ia</i>	-m	-or	
	2. -s	<i>-ē -eā -ā -iā</i>	-s	-ris or -re	
	3. -t	<i>-e -ea -a -ia</i>	-t	-tur	
<i>Plu.</i>	1. -mus	<i>-ē -eā -ā -iā</i>	-mus	-mur	
	2. -tis	<i>-ē -eā -ā -iā</i>	-tis	-mini	
	3. -nt	<i>-e -ea -a -ia</i>	-nt	-ntur	

Vowels as in act.,
 but 8d Sing. IV.
 I. II. III. IV.
 -ē -eā -ā -iā

		IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -ba-m	-re-m	-b-ar	-rer	
	2. -bā-s	-rē-s	-bā-ris (-re)	-rē-ris (-re)	
	3. -ba-t	-re-t	-bā-tur	-rē-tur	
<i>Plu.</i>	1. -bā-mus	-rē-mus	-bā-mur	-rē-mur	
	2. -bā-tis	-rē-tis	-bā-mini	-rē-mini	
	3. -ba-nt	-re-nt	-ba-ntur	-re-ntur	

		FUTURE.		
<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Indicative.</i>	
I. II.		I. II.	III. IV.	
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -b-o	-bo-r	-ā-r	
	2. -bi-s	-be-ris (-re)	-ē-ris (-re)	
	3. -bi-t	-bi-tur	-ē-tur	
<i>Plu.</i>	1. -bi-mus	-bi-mur	-ē-mur	
	2. -bi-tis	-bi-mini	-ē-mini	
	3. -bu-nt	-bu-ntur	-ē-ntur	

Verbs in 4o retain ē
 before these endings

Vowels as in act.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. -i	-eri-m	p. p. ending in	{ sum sim
2. -isti	-eris	-tus (-sus), -a,	{ es sis
3. -it	-erit	-um	{ est sit
<i>Plu.</i> 1. -imus	-erimus		{ sumus simus
2. -istis	-eritis	-I, -ae, -a	{ estis sitis
3. -erunt	-erint		{ sunt sint

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. -era-m	-isse-m	p. p. ending in	{ eram essem
2. -erās	-issēs	-tus (-sus), -a,	{ erās essēs
3. -era-t	-isse-t	-um	{ erat esset
<i>Plu.</i> 1. -erā-mus	-issē-mus		{ erāmus essēmus
2. -erāt-is	-issēt-is	-I, -ae, -a	{ erātis essētis
3. -era-nt	-isse-nt		{ erant essent

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. -er-ō	p. p. ending in	{ erō
2. -er-is	-tus (-sus), -a,	{ eris
3. -er-it	-um	{ erit
<i>Plu.</i> 1. -er-i-mus		{ erimus
2. -er-i-tis	-I, -ae, -a	{ eritis
3. -er-i-nt		{ erunt

Imperative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. —	<i>Plu.</i> 2. -te	<i>Sing.</i> 2. -re	<i>Plu.</i> 2. -mini
-------------------	--------------------	---------------------	----------------------

FUTURE.

2. -tō	2. -tōte	2. -tor	2. —
3. -tō	3. -ntō	3. -tor	3. -ntor

Infinitives.

PRES. -re	I. II. IV. -ri ; III. -i
PERF. -isse	-tus (-sus), -a, -um esse
FUT. -tūrus esse	-um, -īri

Participles.

PRES. -ns, -ntis

PERF. —

FUT. -tūrus (-sūrus), -a, -um

-tus (-sus), -a, -um

GER. -ndus, -a, -um

Gerund.

-ndi, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō

Supine.

-tum, -tū

First Conjugation.**424.** Principal Parts: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.**

Stem : amā-.

*Indicative.***Active Voice.****PRESENT.***I love, am loving, do love, etc.*

amō amāmus

amās amātis

amat amant

Passive Voice.*I am loved, etc.*

amor amāmur

amāris or -re amāmini

amātur amantur

IMPERFECT.*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam amābāmus

amābās amābātis

amābat amābant

amābar

amābāris or -re

amābātur

amābāmur

amābāmini

amābantur

FUTURE.*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō amābimus

amābis amābitis

amābit amābunt

amābor

amāberis or -re

amābitur

amābimur

amābimini

amābuntur

PERFECT.*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī amāvimus

amāvistī amāvistis

amāvit amāverunt or -re

amātus { sum
 es
 estamāti { sumus
 estis
 sunt

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram amāverāmus
 amāverās amāverātis
 amāverat amāverant

amātus { eram amāti { erāmus
 erās erātis
 erat erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō amāverimus
 amāveris amāveritis
 amāverit amāverint

amātus { erō amāti { erimus
 eris eritis
 erit erunt

*Subjunctive.*¹**PRESENT.**

amem amēmus
 amēs amētis
 amet ament

amer amēmur
 amēris or-re amēmini
 amētur amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem amārēmus
 amārēs amārētis
 amāret amārent

amārer amārēmur
 amārēris or-re amārēmini
 amārētur amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim amāverimus
 amāveris amāveritis
 amāverit amāverint

amātus { sim amāti { simus
 sis sitis
 sit sint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvíssem amāvíssemus
 amāvísseēs amāvíssetis
 amāvísset amāvíssett

amātus { essem amāti { essemus
 essēs essētis
 esset essent

¹ No satisfactory translation for the subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. It must be learned from the exercises illustrating the uses of the subjunctive.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**amā, *love thou.*amāre, *be thou loved.*amāte, *love ye.*amāmini, *be ye loved.***FUTURE.**amātō, *thou shalt love.*amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*amātō, *he shall love.*amātor, *he shall be loved.*amātōte, *you shall love.*amantō, *they shall love.*amantor, *they shall be loved.**Infinitive.*PRES. amāre, *to love.*amārī, *to be loved.*PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*amātus esse, *to have been loved.*FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*amātum iri, *to be about to be loved.**Participles.*PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having*FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *been loved.*
*about to love.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. amandī, *of loving.*amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*D. amandō, *for loving.*Ac. amandum, *loving.*Ab. amandō, *by loving.**Supine.*Ac. amātum, *to love.*Ab. amātū, *to love.*

425. Second Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, have, hold.**¹

Stem: **habē-**.

Indicative.

Active Voice.

I hold, etc.

habeō	habēmus
habēs	habētis
habet	habent

Passive Voice.

PRESENT.

I am held, etc.

habeor	habēmur
habēris or -re	habēmini
habētur	habentur

IMPERFECT.

I held, was holding, etc.

I was held, etc.

habēbam	habebāmus	habēbar	habebāmur
habebās	habebātis	habebāris or -re	habebāmini
habebat	habebant	habebātur	habebantur

FUTURE.

I shall hold, etc.

I shall be held, etc.

habebō	habebimus	habebor	habebimur
habebis	habebitis	habeberis or -re	habebimini
habebit	habebunt	habebitur	habebuntur

PERFECT.

I have held, etc.

I have been held, etc.

habuī	habuimus	habitus {	sum	habiti {	sumus
habuistī	habuistis		es		estis
habuīt	habuerunt or -re		est		sunt.

¹ The meaning *have* is the more common, but *hold* is better adapted to the paradigm.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had held, etc.**I had been held, etc.*

habueram	habuerāmus	habitus {	eram	habiti {	erāmus
habuerās	habuerātis		erās		erātis
habuerat	habuerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have held, etc.**I shall have been held, etc.*

habuerō	habuerimus	habitus {	erō	habiti {	erimus
habueris	habueritis		eris		eritis
habuerit	habuerint		erit		erunt

Subjunctive.**PRESENT.**

habeam	habeamus	habeat	habeamur
habeas	habeatis	habeatis or-re	habeamini
habeat	habeant	habeatur	habeantur

IMPERFECT.

habērem	habērēmus	habēret	habērēmur
habērēs	habērētis	habērētis or-re	habērēmini
habēret	habērent	habēretur	habērentur

PERFECT.

habuerim	habuerimus	habitus {	sim	habiti {	simus
habueris	habueritis		sis		sitis
habuerit	habuerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

habuissem	habuissēmus	habitus {	essem	habiti {	essēmus
habuissēs	habuissētis		essēs		essētis
habuisset	habuissent		esset		essent

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**habē, *hold thou.*habēre, *be thou held.*habēte, *hold ye.*habēminī, *be ye held.***FUTURE.**habētō, *thou shalt hold.*habētor, *thou shalt be held.*habētō, *he shall hold.*habētor, *he shall be held.*habētōte, *you shall hold.*habentō, *they shall hold.*habentor, *they shall be held.**Infinitive.*PRES. habēre, *to hold.*habēri, *to be held.*PERF. habuisse, *to have held.*habitus esse, *to have been held.*FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be about to hold.*habitum iri, *to be about to be held.**Participles.*PRES. habēns, -entis, *holding.*PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *having*FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um, *about to hold.**been held.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. habendi, *of holding.*habendus, -a, -um, *to be held.*D. habendō, *for holding.*AC. habendum, *holding.*AB. habendō, *by holding.**Supine.*AC. habitum, *to hold.*AB. habitū, *to hold.*

Third Conjugation.

426. Principal Parts: **Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum.**Stem: **dūcē.***Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I lead, am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris or -re	dūcimini
dūcitur	dūcuntur

IMPERFECT.*I led, was leading, etc.**I was led, was being led, etc.*

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris or -re	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

FUTURE.*I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcām	dūcāmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

dūcār	dūcāmur
dūcēris or -re	dūcēmini
dūcētur	dūcentur

PERFECT.*I led, have led, etc.**I was led, have been led, etc.*

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt or -re

ductus	{ sum	ducti	{ sumus
-a	{ es	-ae	{ estis
-um	{ est	-a	{ sunt

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

ductus	eram	ducti	erāmus
-a	erās	-ae	erātis
-um	erat	-a	erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have led, etc.**I shall have been led, etc.*

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

ductus	erō	ducti	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris or -re	dūcāmini
dūcātur	dūcantur

IMPERFECT.

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerāris or -re	dūcerāmini
dūcerātur	dūcerentur

PERFECT.

dūxerim	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

ductus	sim	ducti	simus
	sis		sitis
	sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

dūxissem	dūxissemus
dūxisseōs	dūxissetis
dūxisset	dūxisSENT

ductus	essem	ducti	essemus
	essēs		essētis
	esset		essent

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**dūc(e),¹ *lead thou.*dūcere, *be thou led.*dūcite, *lead ye.*dūcimini, *be ye led.***FUTURE.**dūcitō, *thou shalt lead.*dūcitor, *thou shalt be led.*dūcitō, *he shall lead.*dūcitor, *he shall be led.*dūcitōte, *ye shall lead.*dūcuntō, *they shall lead.*dūcuntor, *they shall be led.**Infinitive.*PRES. dūcere, *to lead.*dūci, *to be led.*PERF. dūxisse, *to have led.*ductus esse, *to have been led.*FUT. ductūrus esse, *to be about to lead.*ductum iri, *to be about to be led.**Participles.*PRES. dūcēns, -entis, *leading.*PERF. ductus, -a, -um, *having been led.*FUT. ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. dūcendī, *of leading.*dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*D. dūcendō, *for leading.*AC. dūcendum, *leading.*AB. dūcendō, *by leading.**Supine.*AC. ductum, *to lead.*AB. ductū, *to lead.*

¹ Dūce would be the regular form, but the imperatives of dūcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō lose the ending -e.

Fourth Conjugation.

427. Principal Parts: **Audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum.**Stem: **audi.***Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō audimus
audīs auditis
audit audiunt

audior audimur
audiris *or-re* audimini
auditur audiuntur

IMPERFECT.*I heard, was hearing, did hear, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam audiēbāmus
audiēbās audiēbātis
audiēbat audiēbant

audiēbar audiēbāmur
audiēbāris *or-re* audiēbāmini
audiēbātur audiēbantur

FUTURE.*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam audiēmus
audies audietis
audiet audient

audiar audiēmur
audieris *or-re* audiemini
audietur audientur

PERFECT.*I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audīvi audīvimus
audīvistī audīvistis
audīvit audīverunt *or-re*

auditus { **sum**
 es **auditi** { **sumus**
 est **estis**
 sunt

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus {	eram	audīti {	erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis		erās		erātis
audīverat	audīverant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus {	erō	audīti {	erimus
audīveris	audīveritis		eris		eritis
audīverit	audīverint		erit		erunt

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

audīam	audīamus	audīat	audīamur
audīas	audīatis	audīatis or -re	audīamini
audīat	audīant	audīatur	audīantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīreris or -re	audīrēmini
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus {	sim	audīti {	simus
audīveris	audīveritis		sis		sitis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus {	essem	audīti {	essemus
audīvisēs	audīvisētis		essēs		essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**audī, *hear thou.*audīre, *be thou heard.*audite, *hear ye.*audimini, *be ye heard.***FUTURE.**auditō, *thou shalt hear.*auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*auditō, *he shall hear.*auditor, *he shall be heard.*auditōte, *ye shall hear.*audiantō, *they shall hear.*audiantor, *they shall be heard.**Infinitive.*PRES. audire, *to hear.*audiri, *to be heard.*PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*auditus esse, *to have been heard.*FUT. auditurus esse, *to be about to hear.*auditum iri, *to be about to be heard.**Participles.*PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *heard,*FUT. auditurus, -a, -um, *having been heard.**about to hear.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. audiendī, *of hearing.*audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*D. audiendō, *for hearing.*AC. audiendum, *hearing.*AB. audiendō, *by hearing.**Supine.*AC. auditum, *to hear.*AB. auditū, *to hear.*

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō.

428. Verbs of the third conjugation in -iō have some forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. Before *a*, *ō*, *u*, and *ē* they retain the *i* of the stem, but lose it elsewhere, except in the gerund and participle.

Principal Parts: *Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.*

Stem: *capī.*

*Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.**

I take, am taking, do take, etc.

I am taken, etc.

<i>capīō</i>	<i>capimus</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capit</i>

<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>caperis or -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

IMPERFECT.

I took, was taking, did take, etc.

I was taken, etc.

capīēbam, etc.

capīēbar, etc.

FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.

I shall be taken, etc.

<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiēmus</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>

<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capieris or -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

PERFECT.

I have taken, took, etc.

I have been (was) taken, etc.

cēpī, etc.

captus sum, etc.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had taken, etc.**I had been taken, etc.**cēperam, etc.**captus eram, etc.***FUTURE PERFECT.***I shall have taken, etc.**I shall have been taken, etc.**cēperō, etc.**captus erō, etc.**Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

capiam	capiamus
capias	capiamini
capiat	capiant

capiar	capiamur
capiaris or -re	capiamini
capiat	capiantur

IMPERFECT.*caperem, etc.**caperer, etc.***PERFECT.***cēperim, etc.**captus sim, etc.***PLUPERFECT.***cēpisset, etc.**captus essem, etc.**Imperative.***PRESENT.***cape, take (thou).**capere, be (thou) taken.**capite, take (ye).**capimini, be (ye) taken.***FUTURE.***capitō, thou shalt take.**capitor, thou shalt be taken.**capitō, he shall take.**capitor, he shall be taken.**capitōte, ye shall take.**capituntō, they shall take.**capluntor, they shall be taken.*

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Infinitive.*PRES. *capere, to take.*capī, *to be taken.*PERF. *cēpisse, to have taken.*captus esse, *to have been taken.*FUT. *captūrus esse, to be about
to take.*captum iri, *to be about to be
taken.**Participles.*PRES. *capīēns, -ientis, taking.*PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken,*FUT. *captūrus, -a, -um, about
to take.**having been taken.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. *capiendī, of taking.*capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*D. *capiendō, for taking.*AC. *capiendum, taking.*AB. *capiendō, by taking.**Supine.*AC. *captum, to take.*AB. *captū, to take.*

429.

DEPONENT VERBS.

- I. Conj. **mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, admire.**
 II. Conj. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear.**
 III. Conj. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.**
 IV. Conj. **potior, potīri, potitus sum, get possession of.**

Indicative.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
PRES.	mīror	vereor	sequor	potior
	mīrāris	verēris	sequeris	potīris
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	mīrāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
	mīrantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potitus sum
PLUP.	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potitus eram
F. P.	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potitus erō

Subjunctive.

PRES.	mīrer	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potitus sim
PLUP.	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potitus essem

Imperative.

PRES.	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

Infinitive.

PRES.	mirārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	mirātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	mirātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse

Participles.

PRES.	mirāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	mirātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
PERF.	mirātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	mirandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

Gerund.

mirandī	verendī	sequendī	potiendī
mirandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	potiendō, etc.

Supine.

mirātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	potitum, -tū
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------

IRREGULAR VERBS.

430. Principal Parts: *Sum, esse, fui.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.

I am, etc.

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

IMPERFECT.

I was, etc.

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

FUTURE.

I shall be, etc.

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

PERFECT.

I was, have been, etc.

fui	fuiinus
fuisti	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt or -ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had been, etc.

fueram	fuērāmus
fuērās	fuērātis
fuerat	fuērunt

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been, etc.

fuero	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

sim	simus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

IMPERFECT.

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

PERFECT.

fu er im	fu er imus
fu er is	fu er itis
fu er it	fu er int

PLUPERFECT.

fu issem	fu issemus
fu issēs	fu issētis
fu isset	fu issent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

es, be thou.

este, be ye.

FUTURE.

estō, thou shalt be.
estō, he shall be.

estōte, you shall be.
suntō, they shall be.

Infinitive.

PRES. esse, to be.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

FUT. { futūrus esse, } to be about to be.
fore,

Participle.

FUT. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

Compounds of Sum.

431. Principal Parts: Possum, posse, potui, be able.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

possim	possimus
possis	possitis
possit	possint

IMPERFECT.

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

IMPERFECT.

possem	possēmus
possēs	possētis
posset	possent

FUTURE.

poterō

PERFECT.

potui

PERFECT.

potuerim

PLUPERFECT.

potueram

PLUPERFECT.

potuissem

FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō

Infinitive.

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

Participle.

PRES. potēns, -entis

432.

Principal Parts:

Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, *be profitable.**Indicative.*

PRESENT.

prōsum	prōsumus
prōdes	prōdestis
prōdest	prōsunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

prōsim	prōsimus
prōsis	prōsitis
prōsit	prōsint

IMPERFECT.

prōderam

IMPERFECT.

prōdessem

FUTURE.

prōderō

PERFECT.
pröfui

PERFECT.
pröfuerim

PLUPERFECT.
pröfueram

PLUPERFECT.
pröfuissem

FUTURE PERFECT.
pröfuerō

Imperative.

PRESENT.
prödes prödeste

FUTURE.
prödestō prödestōte

Infinitive.

PRÆ. prödesse

PERF. pröfuisse

FUT. pröfutūrus esse

Participle.

FUT. pröfutūrus, -a, -um

433.

Principal Parts:

Volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish.

Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling.

Mālō, mālle, mālui, be more willing, prefer.

Indicative.

PRÆS.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
	volēs		
	volēt		

PRÆF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PRÆF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive.

PRÆS.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velitis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PRÆF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative.

PRÆS.	—	nōli nōlite	—
FUT.	—	nōlitō, etc.	—

Infinitive.

PRÆS.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PRÆF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle.

PRÆS.	volēns	nōlēns	—
--------------	--------	--------	---

434. Principal Parts: **Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry.**

Active.

Passive.

Indicative.

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris or -re	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	ferēs tuli		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

Subjunctive.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPERF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulisse	lātus essem

Imperative.

PRES.	fer ¹	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Infinitive.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

Participles.

PRES.	ferēns	PERF. lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	

¹ See 394, note on imperative.

Gerund.

G.	ferendī
D.	ferendō
Ac.	ferendum
Ab.	ferendō

Gerundive.

ferendus

Supine.

Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

435. Principal Parts: Eō, ire, īi or īvī, Itum, go.

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.

Indicative.

PRES.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fiunt
IMPERF.	ībām		fīēbam	
FUT.	ībō		fīam	
PERF.	īi (īvī)		fīctus sum	
PLUP.	ieram		factus eram	
FUT. PERF.	ierō		factus erō	

Subjunctive.

PRES.	eam	fīam
IMPERF.	īrem	fīerem
PERF.	ierim (īverim)	factus sim
PLUP.	īessem (īvissem, iissem)	factus essem

Imperative.

PRES.	i	īte	fī	fīte
FUT.	itō	itōte	fītō	fītōte
	itō	euntō	fītō	fiuntō

Infinitive.

PRES.	īre	ferī
PERF.	īsse (īvisse, iisse)	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum īrī

Participles.

PRES.	īēns, GEN. euntis	PERF. factus
FUT.	itūrus	

Gerund.¹

G. eundī	Ac. eundum
D. eundō	Ab. eundō

Gerundive.

faciendus

Supine.

Ac. itum	Ab. itū
-----------------	----------------

¹ The gerundive of *eō* occurs in the neuter, *eundum*.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

[The numbers in parenthesis show the sections in the book where the rules are first given.]

NOMINATIVE.

436 (13). *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

PREDICATE NOUN.

437 (26). *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

APPOSITIVE.

438 (28). *The appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

GENITIVE.

POSSESSIVE AND SUBJECTIVE.

439 (17). *A noun limiting another noun and not meaning the same person or thing is in the genitive.*

PARTITIVE.

440 (135). *The partitive genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken.*

DATIVE.

INDIRECT OBJECT.

441 (33). *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

442 (273). *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, believe, help, and their opposites, also to command, obey, serve, resist, persuade, and the like, govern the dative.*

WITH COMPOUNDS.

443 (268). *Many verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super** govern the dative as indirect object.*

POSSESSOR.

444 (49). *The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

AGENT.

445 (390). *With the gerundive expressing obligation, the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests.*

TWO DATIVES.

446 (288). *Two datives, of the object to which and of the end for which, are used with **sum** and a few other verbs.*

WITH ADJECTIVES.

447 (155). *Many adjectives take a dative to define their application.*

ACCUSATIVE.

DIRECT OBJECT.

448 (14). *The direct object is in the accusative.*

EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE.

449 (182). *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

LIMIT OF MOTION.

450 (240). *Place whither is expressed by the accusative with a preposition, but with names of cities and towns place whither is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*

SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

451 (231). *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

ABLATIVE.

SEPARATION.

452. *The ablative with or without a preposition is used with words denoting separation.*

1. With verbs of *freeing, removing, depriving, and lacking* the preposition is regularly omitted; as, **Mē metū liberābis**, *you will free me from fear*; **Hostis finibus prohibuit**, *he kept the enemy from his territories*.

2. With compounds of **ā, ab, dē, ex**, the preposition is regularly used; as, **Cōsulēs ex urbe exiērunt**. ✓

AFTER COMPARATIVES.

453 (129). *The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (than) is omitted.*

AGENT.

454 (101). *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.*

CAUSE.

455 (109). *Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

MANNER.

456 (77). *Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, or a limiting adjective, or with both.*

↓ Manner may also, as in English, be expressed by an adverb.

INSTRUMENT OR MEANS.

457 (70). *Instrument or means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

ACCOMPANIMENT.

458 (84). *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.*

In military phrases **cum** is often omitted; as, **Caesar multis legiōnibus in Galliam properat**, *Cæsar hastens into Gaul with many legions.*

DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

459 (142). *The degree of difference is denoted by the ablative.*

QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC.

460 (122). *The ablative with an adjective may be used to express quality.*

SPECIFICATION.

461 (116). *The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application.*

ABSOLUTE.

462 (364). *The ablative absolute is used to designate the time or circumstance of an action.*

PLACE WHERE.

463 (240). *Place where is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, but with names of cities and towns place where is expressed by the locative.*

PLACE WHENCE.

464 (240). *Place whence is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, but with names of cities and towns place whence is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

TIME WHEN.

465 (90). *Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Time within which may also be expressed by **in** with the ablative.

WITH DEPONENTS.

466 (254). *The deponents **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor** and their compounds govern the ablative.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

467 (39). *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES.

468 (215). *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.*

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

469 (22). *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

INFINITIVES.

AS SUBJECT OR OBJECT.

470 (260). *An infinitive with or without a subject-accusative may be used as the subject of a sentence, as a predicate noun, or as object of a verb.*

COMPLEMENTARY.

471 (262). *The infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning.*

IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

472 (232). *Statements after verbs (and other expressions) of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative.*

473 (234). *In Indirect Discourse the present infinitive is used to represent an action as going on; the perfect, as completed; the future, as in the future relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

474 (304). *Primary tenses of the indicative are followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive, and secondary tenses by secondary tenses.*

INDIRECT QUESTION.

475 (306). *The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.*

PURPOSE.

476 (311). *The subjunctive with ut, nē, or a relative is used to express purpose (final clauses).*

1. Substantive clauses of purpose with *ut* are used with verbs meaning *to ask, command, determine, permit, persuade, urge, wish*. Among the most common of these are the following: *ōgō, concēdō, cōstituō, cūrō, dēcernō, hortor, imperō, mandō, metuō, moneō, orō, persuādeō, petō, postulō, quaerō, rogō, timeō, vereor, videō, volō*.

2. *Iubeō* and *vetō* take either the subjunctive or the infinitive. With *iubeō* the infinitive (with subject-accusative) is more usual.

3. Verbs of *wishing* also take either construction, but *volō* and *cupiō* oftener take the infinitive.

4. Verbs of *permitting* take either construction, but *patior* regularly takes the infinitive with a subject-accusative.

5. *Cōnor* regularly takes the complementary infinitive.

6. Verbs of *fearing* take the subjunctive with *nē* translated *that* or *lest*, or with *ut* (*nē nōn*) translated *that not*.

RESULT.

477 (318). *The subjunctive with ut, ut nōn, or a relative is used to express result.*

1. Relative clauses of result are used with *quā* after negative expressions of *doubting* or *hindering*.

COMMANDS AND REQUESTS.

478 (329). Commands, requests, and permissions are expressed by the subjunctive, except in the second person,

and in the second person they may be expressed by the subjunctive.

1. The second person of the subjunctive in positive commands is rarely used except when the subject is *you* in the sense of *one* or *people*.

2. Negative commands of the second person are expressed by *nōli* (*nōlīte*) with the present infinitive, or by the present or perfect subjunctive with *nē*.

WISHES.

479 (331). *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, often introduced by utinam. The negative is nō. Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and referring to the past the pluperfect.*

SIMPLE CONDITIONS.

480 (336). *In simple conditional sentences the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.*

LESS VIVID FUTURE.

481 (338). *Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

CONTRARY TO FACT.

482 (340). *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

CUM TEMPORAL.

483 (346). *Cum* meaning when (*cum temporal*) takes the indicative to define a time.

CUM HISTORICAL.

484 (348). In narrative, *cum* meaning when or as (*cum historical*) takes the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to describe a time.

CUM CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE.

485 (352). *Cum* causal and concessive (meaning since and although) takes the subjunctive in all tenses.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

486 (358). In Indirect Discourse, questions, commands, and subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive.

487 (359). If the verb of saying, etc., introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a primary tense, the subjunctives are present or perfect; if it is in a secondary tense, the subjunctives are imperfect or pluperfect.

GERUND.

488 (371). The gerund is, as a noun, governed by other words; as a verb, it may take an object in the proper case.

489 (372). Instead of the gerund with a direct object, the gerundive is generally used. The gerundive agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun, which stands in the case in which the gerund would have been.

SUPINE.

490 (378). *The supine in -um (accusative supine) is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

491 (383). *The supine in -ū (ablative supine) is used with adjectives (and a few other words) to limit their meaning.*

REFERENCES TO STANDARD GRAMMARS.

[The grammars referred to are Allen & Greenough's (A.), Bennett's (B.), Gildersleeve's (G.), and Harkness's (H.).]

Ablative.

1. Absolute. A. 255; B. 227; G. 409-10; H. 489.
2. Of accompaniment. A. 248, 7; B. 222; G. 392; H. 473, 1.
3. Of agent. A. 246; B. 216; G. 401; H. 468.
4. Of cause. A. 245; B. 219; G. 408; H. 475.
5. Of comparison. A. 247; B. 217; G. 398; H. 471.
6. Of degree of difference. A. 250; B. 223; G. 403; H. 479.
7. Of manner. A. 248; B. 220; G. 399; H. 473, 3.
8. Of instrument or means. A. 248, 8; B. 218; G. 401; H. 476.
9. Of place where. A. 258, 4; B. 228; G. 385-9; H. 483.
10. Of place from which. A. 258; B. 229; G. 390-1; H. 491, 2.
11. Of quality or characteristic. A. 251; B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2.
12. Of separation. A. 243; B. 214; G. 390; H. 461, 462.
13. Of specification. A. 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480.
14. Of time. A. 256; B. 230-1; G. 393; H. 486.

Accusative.

15. Direct object. A. 237; B. 172 ff.; G. 330; H. 404.
16. Of extent. A. 256-7; B. 181; G. 335-6; H. 417.
17. Of limit. A. 258, b; B. 182; G. 337; H. 418.
18. Subject of infinitive. A. 173, 2; B. 184; G. 343, 2; H. 415.

Adjectives (adjective pronouns and participles).

19. Agreement with nouns. A. 186-7; B. 234; G. 211; H. 394.
20. Denoting a part. A. 193; B. 241, 1; G. 291, R. 2; H. 497, 4.
21. As adverbs. A. 191; B. 239; G. 325, R. 6; H. 497.
22. As nouns. A. 188-9; B. 236-7; G. 204; H. 494.
23. Adverbs. A. 207; B. 140; G. 440; H. 654.

Agreement. See Adjectives and Apposition.

24. Of relative with antecedent. A. 198-9; B. 250; G. 614; H. 396.
25. Of verb with subject. A. 204-5; B. 254; G. 211; H. 388.
26. *Alius* and *alter*. A. 203; B. 253; G. 319; H. 516.

- 27. Apposition.** A. 183-4; B. 169; G. 320-1; H. 393.
- 28. Causal clauses.** With *cum*. A. 326; B. 286, 2; G. 586; H. 598.
- 29. Concessive clauses.** A. 313; B. 308-9; G. 603-9; H. 598.
- Conditional sentences.**
- 30.** First form or type; pres., past, fut. (*more vivid*). A. 306-7; B. 302; G. 595; H. 574.
- 31.** Second form or type; fut. (*less vivid*). A. 307, 2; B. 303; G. 596; H. 576.
- 32.** Third form or type; contrary to fact. A. 308; B. 304; G. 597; H. 579.
- 33.** In indirect discourse. A. 337; B. 319-21; G. 656-9; H. 646-8.
- 34. Conjunctions.** A. 208; B. 341-6; G. 474 ff.; H. 567, 661.
- Consecutive clauses.** See Result.
- Cum.**
- Causal.** See 28.
- 35. Concessive.** A. 313, *d*; B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 598.
- Temporal and historical.** See 100.
- Dative.**
- 36.** With adjectives. A. 234; B. 192; G. 359; H. 434.
- 37.** Of agent. A. 232; B. 189; G. 354-5; H. 431.
- 38.** With compounds. A. 228; B. 187, III.; G. 347; H. 429.
- 39.** Of indirect object. A. 225-6; B. 187; G. 345-6; H. 424.
- 40.** Of possessor. A. 231; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430.
- 41.** Of purpose, end or object for which. A. 233; B. 191; G. 356; H. 433.
- 42.** With special verbs. A. 227; B. 187, II.; G. 346; H. 426.
- Final clauses.** See Purpose.
- 43. Fore ut with subj. for fut. inf.** A. 288, *f*.; B. 270, 3; G. 248; H. 619, 2.
- Genitive.**
- 44.** Objective. A. 217; B. 200; G. 363, 2; H. 440, 2.
- 45.** Partitive; of the whole. A. 216; B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 440, 5.
- 46.** Possessive. A. 214, 1; B. 198; G. 362; H. 440, 1.
- 47.** Subjective. A. 214; B. 199; G. 363; H. 440, 1.
- Gerund and gerundive.**
- 48.** Genitive. A. 298; B. 338, 1, 339; G. 428; H. 623, 626.
- 49.** Dative. A. 299; B. 338, 2, 339; G. 429; H. 627.
- 50.** Accusative. A. 300; B. 338, 3, 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628.
- 51.** Ablative. A. 301; B. 338, 4, 339; H. 431, 433; H. 629-31.
- 52. Imperative.** A. 269; B. 281; G. 266 ff.; H. 560.
- Imperfect indicative.**
- 53.** Of customary and repeated action. A. 277; B. 260, 2; G. 231, 233; H. 534, 3.

54. Of attempted and continued action, etc. A. 277, c; B. 260, 3; G. 233; H. 530.
55. Impersonal verbs. A. 146; B. 138; G. 208; H. 302.
56. Impersonal uses: passive of intransitive verbs. A. 230; B. 187, II., b; G. 208, 2; H. 302, 6.
57. In and sub with acc. and abl. A. 153; B. 143; G. 418; H. 420, 3.
58. Indicative. A. 264; B. 271; G. 254; H. 520.
59. Tenses of. A. 276 ff.; B. 257 ff.; G. 222 ff.; H. 526 ff.
60. Indirect discourse. *Ōrātiō obliqua*. A. 336 ff.; B. 313 ff.; G. 508, 2, 648 ff.; H. 642.
61. Subordinate clauses in. A. 336, 2; B. 314-16; G. 650 ff.; H. 643.
Conditional sentences in. See 33.
Infinitive.
62. Complementary. A. 271; B. 328; G. 423; H. 607.
63. As object. A. 272, 330, B; B. 331; G. 527, 532-3; H. 613.
64. As subject and predicate. A. 270; B. 327, 330; G. 422, 424, 535; H. 615, 616, 1.
Subject of. See Accusative, 18.
65. Tenses of. A. 288, 336, A; B. 270; G. 281, 530-1; H. 617.
66. With *iubeō* and *vetō*. A. 331, a; B. 331, II.; G. 423, n. 6; H. 614.
Interrogative sentences. See Questions.
67. Locative. A. 258, 4; B. 232; G. 411; H. 483-4.
Nominative.
68. Predicate. A. 176, 185; B. 167-8; G. 205-6, 325; H. 398.
69. Subject. A. 173; B. 166; G. 203; H. 387.
70. Order of words. A. 343 ff.; B. 348 ff.; G. 671 ff.; H. 664 ff.
71. Participles. A. 289 ff.; B. 336-7; G. 664 ff.; H. 636 ff.
72. Perfect passive for Eng. perf. act. A. 290, d; G. 410, 1; H. 640, 4.
73. Tenses of. A. 290; B. 336; G. 282-3; H. 640.
74. Periphrastic conjugation, active. A. 129, 293, a; B. 115; G. 247; H. 236.
75. Periphrastic conjugation, passive. A. 129, 294, b; B. 115; G. 251; H. 237.
76. Prepositions. A. 152 ff.; B. 141 ff.; G. 412 ff.; H. 420.
77. Prohibitions. A. 269, a; B. 276; G. 272, 2; H. 561.
Pronouns. For Agreement, see 24.
78. Demonstrative. A. 100-2, 195; B. 246; G. 305-11; H. 505-7.
79. Indefinite. A. 202; B. 252; G. 313-19; H. 512-5.
80. Interrogative. A. 104-5; B. 90; G. 106; H. 511.
81. Personal. A. 194; B. 242; G. 304; H. 500.
82. Possessive. A. 197; B. 243; G. 312; H. 501.

83. Reflexive. A. 196; B. 244; G. 309; H. 502-3.
 84. Relative. A. 197, 5-201; B. 250; G. 610 ff.; H. 510.

Purpose or final clauses.

85. Pure purpose with *ut* or *nē*. A. 317; B. 282; G. 545; H. 568.
 86. After verbs of fearing. A. 331 f.; B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567.
 87. Relative. A. 317, 2; B. 282, 2; G. 630; H. 568.

Purpose expressed by *ad* with acc. of gerund or gerundive. See 50.

By *causā* with gen. of gerund or gerundive. See 48.

By the supine. See 96.

Questions.

88. Direct. A. 210; B. 162; G. 453 ff.; H. 377, 4.
 89. Indirect. A. 334; B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649, II.
 90. Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōne*, and *num*. A. 210, a, c; B. 162, 2; G. 454-6; H. 378.

Quin. See 93.

Relative clauses.

Of purpose. See 85.

Of result. See 92.

Result or consecutive clauses.

91. Pure result with *ut*, *ut nōn*, and *quin*. A. 319; B. 284; G. 552; H. 570.
 92. Relative. A. 319, 2; B. 284, 2; G. 631; H. 591.
 93. With *quin* after verbs of doubting, etc. A. 332, g; B. 296; G. 555-6; H. 594, II.
 94. Sequence of tenses. A. 285-7; B. 267-8; G. 509 ff.; H. 543 ff.

Subject. See 18 and 69.

Subjunctive.

95. Hortatory. A. 266; B. 274-5; G. 263; H. 559, 1.
 96. Optative. A. 267; B. 279; G. 260-1; H. 558.
 97. Tenses of. A. 283 ff.; B. 266 ff.; G. 277; H. 541 ff.
 98. Supine in *um*. A. 302; B. 340; G. 435; H. 633.
 99. Supine in *ū*. A. 303; B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 635.

Temporal clauses.

100. With *cum*. A. 325; B. 288-9; G. 580, 585; H. 600-1.
 101. Vocative. A. 241; B. 171; G. 201, R. 1, 2; H. 402.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb.
c. = common gender.
cf. = compare.
comp. = comparative.
dat. = dative.
dem. = demonstrative.
dep. = deponent.
f. = feminine.
gen. = genitive.
indecl. = indeclinable.

indef. = indefinite.
interr. = interrogative.
m. = masculine.
n. = neuter.
pass. = passive.
part. = participle.
perf. = perfect.
pl. = plural.
pron. = pronoun.
rel. = relative.
sing. = singular.
subst. = substantive.
conj. = conjunction.

A.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., from, by.
abdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, hide.
absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus,
 be absent, be away, be distant.
ac (atque), conj., and.
accēdō, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssum,
 approach.
accidō, -cidere, -cidi, fall upon,
 happen.
accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ac-
cuse, chide.
acer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp,
 active.
aciēs, -ei, f., line of battle.
ācrit, adv., sharply.

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp.
ad, prep. with acc., to, toward,
 for, near.
addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-
tum, lead to, induce.
adfligō, -ere, -flixī, -flictum,
 dash upon, wreck.
adiciō, -ere, -lēci, -lectus, throw
 up.
administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 execute, manage.
adorior, -iri, -ortus, rise up at,
 attack.
adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be
 present, ass't.
adulēscēns, -entis, young; as a
noun, young man.

- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, coming, arrival, approach.
- adversus**, -a, -um, (*part. of advertō*), *adj.*, adverse, unfavorable.
- Aedui**, ōrum, *m.*, the Æduans, a Gallic tribe.
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, sick.
- aegrē**, *adv.*, with difficulty.
- aestās**, -tātis, *f.*, summer.
- aestus**, -ūs, *m.*, tide.
- Africus**, -i, *m. adj.* (*ventus*), southwest wind.
- ager**, -agri, *m.*, field, country.
- agger**, -eris, *m.*, mound.
- agmen**, -minis, *n.*, column, troops (in motion).
- agō**, agere, ēgi, āctum, drive, do, act.
- agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer.
- āla**, -ae, *f.*, wing.
- albus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to another, unfavorable.
- aliquantus**, -a, -um, considerable; *as noun*, a good deal.
- aliquis**, -quae (-qua), -quid, (*and aliqui*, -qua, -quod), *indef. pron.*, somebody, something.
- alius**, -a, -ud, (*gen. alius*, *dat. alii*), *adj.*, other, another; *alius* . . . *alius*, one . . . another.
- Allobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, Allobroges, a Gallic tribe.
- alter**, -era, -erum, (*gen. alterius*, *dat. alteri*), *adj.*, one (*of two*), the other (*of two*).
- altitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, height, depth, altitude.
- altus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.
- amicitia**, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
- amicus**, -i, *m.*, friend.
- āmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum (send away), let go, lose.
- amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, love.
- amplus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, large.
- Ancalitēs**, -um, *m.*, the Ancalites.
- ancora**, -ae, *f.*, anchor.
- angustiae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, narrows, narrowness.
- animadvertō**, -ere, -verti, -versum, turn the mind to, notice, perceive.
- animal**, -ālis, *n.*, animal.
- animus**, -i, *m.*, spirit, courage, mind.
- annus**, -i, *m.*, year.
- ante**, *prep. with acc.*; also *adv.*, before.
- antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, old.
- apertus**, -a, -um, (*part. of aperiō*), *adj.*, open.
- appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name.
- apud**, *prep. with acc.*, near, among, with.
- aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.
- aquila**, -ae, *f.*, eagle.
- arbitror**, -āri, -ātus sum, think, believe, suppose.
- arbor**, arboris, *f.*, tree.
- arcessō**, -ere, -sivi, -situs, send for.
- Ariovistus**, -i, *m.*, Ariovistus, a German chieftain.
- Aristidēs**, -is, *m.*, Aristides.
- arma**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.

ars, artis, f., art.
asinus, -i, m., ass.
Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens.
atque, (ac), conj., and.
Atrebās, -atīs, m., one of the
Attrebates.
auctōritās, -tātīs, f., influence,
authority.
audeō, audēre, ausus sum,
(semi-dep.), dare.
audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hear.
autem, conj. (postpositive), but.
auxilium, -i, n., help, assistance,
aid.

B.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., barba-
rian.
Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., Belgæ, a
division of the Gauls.
Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. pl., Bello-
vaci, a Gallic tribe.
bellum, -i, n., war.
bene, adv., well.
Bibracte, -is, n., Bibracte, a
town in Gaul.
Bibroci, -orum, m., the Bibroci.
bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.
brevīs, -e, adj., short, brief.
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.
Britannus, -a, -um, adj., Brit-
ish; masc. used as noun, Briton.
Brūtus, -ī, m., Brutus, a Roman
name.

C.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,
fall.
caedēs, -is, f., slaughter.
Caesar, -aris, m., Cæsar.
Cangi, -ōrum, m., the Cangi.

Cantium, -ī, n., Kent.
caplō, capere, cēpī, captum,
take, capture.
captīvus, -ī, m., captive, pris-
oner.
caput, -itīs, n., head.
carmen, -minis, n., song, poem.
carrus, -ī, m., cart, wagon.
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f., Car-
thage, a city in Africa.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear.
Cassī, -ōrum, m., the Cassi.
Cassivelaunus, -ī, m., Cassive-
launus.
Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus.
castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp.
causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; abl.
as prep. with gen., because, on
account, for the sake.
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., quick,
rapid.
celeritās, -tātīs, f., quickness,
swiftness, celerity.
celeriter, adv., quickly.
cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, conceal,
hide.
centum, indecl. numeral adj.,
hundred.
centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion,
commander of one hundred
men.
certus, -a, -um, adj., certain,
sure.
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero, a Ro-
man.
circiter, adv., about.
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum,
put around, surround.
cīvis, -is, c., citizen.
civitās, -tātīs, f., state.
clam, adv., secretly.

- clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, clamor.
 clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous.
 classis, -is, *f.*, fleet.
 coepī, -isse (*no present*), began.
 cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think,
 ponder.
 cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī,
 -gnitum, find out; *in perfect*,
 know.
 cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum,
 collect, compel, force.
 cohors, -hortis, *f.*, cohort, *a*
tenth part of a legion.
 collis, -is, *m.*, hill.
 colloquium, -ī, *n.*, parley, con-
 ference.
 columba, -ae, *f.*, dove.
 comes, -itis, *c.*, companion.
 commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies.
 Commius, -ī, *m.*, Commius.
 committō, -mittere, -misi,
 -missum, entrust; *with proe-*
lium, engage in battle.
 commodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitting.
 communis, -e, *adj.*, common,
 general.
 commūtātō, -ōnis, *f.*, change.
 compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,
 drive.
 compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plē-
 tum, fill.
 comprehendō, -ere, -ndī,
 -nsum, seize, catch.
 concillium, -ī, *n.*, meeting, coun-
 cil.
 concilō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly.
 cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collā-
 tum, bring together, collect.
 cōnfestim, *adv.*, immediately.
 cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
 finish (do up), wear out.
 cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 assert; *also*, strengthen, en-
 courage, confirm.
 cōnfigō, -ere, -fixī, -flictum,
 dash against, fight.
 coniciō, -icere, -lēcī, -iectum,
 throw together, hurl.
 coniungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunc-
 tum, join.
 cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try,
 endeavor.
 cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum,
 (sit together), take a position,
 encamp.
 cōnsillium, -ī, *n.*, plan, counsel,
 advice.
 cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no*
supine, (stand together), stand
 one's ground, halt.
 cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī,
 -spectum, catch sight of, be-
 hold, spy, see.
 cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum,
 see.
 cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui,
 -stitūtum, arrange (*one's*
mind), decide, draw up (*an*
army).
 cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī,
 -suētum, accustom oneself,
 become accustomed.
 cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul, *head*
of the Roman republic.
 cōnsūmō, -ere, -sumpsī, -sump-
 tum, spend.
 cōnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -sur-
 rēctūrus, rise up together.
 contendō, -tendere, -tendī,
 -tentum, struggle, contend,
 hasten.
 contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, struggle.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, hold together, restrain.
continēns, -entis, pres. p. of contineō, as *adj.*, continuous; as *noun*, continent.
contrā, prep. with acc., against.
conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, come together, assemble, meet, convene.
convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call together.
coorior, -iri, -ortus sum, arise.
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply; *pl.*, forces (*of soldiers*).
coram, adv., in person.
Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth, a city in Greece.
Cornēlia, -ae, f., Cornelia, a Roman name.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (*of an army*).
corōna, -ae, f., crown, garland.
corpus, -oris, n., body.
cottidiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily.
cottidiē, adv., daily.
crēber, crebra, crebrum, adj., close, thickly growing.
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditum, believe, trust.
culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blame.
cum, prep. with abl., with, together with.
cum, conj., when, as, since, although.
cūr, adv., why?
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take care, cause.
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, run.
cursus, -ūs, m., speed.
cūstōs, -ōdis, c., guard, keeper.

D.

dē, prep. with abl., about, concerning, of (*in composition*, from, away, down).
dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, owe, ought.
decem, indecl. num. adj., ten.
decimus, -a, -um, adj., tenth.
dēditio, -ōnis, f., surrender.
dēdō, -ere, -didi, deditum, give up, surrender.
dēducō, -ere, -dūxi, ductum, lead away, lead down, launch.
dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., revolt.
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, fensum, protect, defend.
dēferō, -ere, -tuli, -lātum, carry.
dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., tired.
dēfigō, -ere, -fixi, -fixum, drive down.
dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, please, delight.
dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, destroy.
dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, deliberate, consult.
dēligō, -ēre, -lēgi, -lēctum, select.
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, show, demonstrate.
dēponō, -ere, -posui, -positus, lay aside, lose.
dēsistō, -ere, -stiti, -stiturus, stop, desist from, desist.
dēsūm, -esse, -fui, -futurus, be away, fail.
dētrimentum, -i, n., injury, loss.
dexter, -ra, -rum, adj., right (*hand, etc.*).

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, say, tell.

diēs, diēi, m. (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day.

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.

diligentia, -ae, f., diligence.

dimitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send away, dismiss.

dis-, *inseparable prefix*, apart; *cf. dimitto, discēdō.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cēssi, -cēssum, withdraw.

discipulus, -i, m., pupil.

dissimilis, -e, adj., unlike, dissimilar.

diū, adv., long, a long time;

comp. diūtius, superl. diūtissimē.

dividō, -videre, -vīsi, -vīsum, separate, divide.

Divitiacus, -i, m., Divitiacus, *an Aduan noble.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, give.

doleō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, grieve, be pained.

dolor, -ōris, m., grief, pain.

domesticus, -a, -um, adj., of home, internal.

domina, -ae, f., mistress.

dominus, -i, m., master.

domus, -ūs, f., house, home.

dōnum, -i, n., gift.

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, doubt, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.

ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, lead.

Dumnorix, -igis, m., Dumnorix, *an Aduan, brother of Divitiacus.*

duō, -ae, -ō, adj., two.

dux, ducis, m., leader.

E.

ē (ex), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead out or away.

efferrō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum, bring or carry out, produce.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, effect.

egō, mei, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, come out.

ēgregiē, adv., excellently.

ēgressus, -ūs, m., landing.

ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, drive out, cast out (*of the sea*).

ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, send out.

eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go.

eō, adv., thither, to that place.

eōdem, adv., to the same place.

epistula, -ae, f., letter.

eques, equitis, m., horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.

equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry.

equus, -i, m., horse.

eruptiō, -ōnis, f., sally.

essedārius, -i, m., charioteer.

essedum, -i, n., war chariot.

et, conj., and; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

etiam, conj., even, also.

etsi, conj., although.

ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from.

excēdō, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssurus, go out, retire.

exeō, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itum, go out, go away.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, consider, judge.

expeditō, -ōnis, *f.*, expedition.

expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive out, expel.

explōrātor, -tōris, *m.*, scout.

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set out, disembark.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wait for, expect.

exstō, -are, -stitī, -statūrus, stand out.

exterus (*also* **exter**), -a, -um, *adj.*, outer, outward; — *comp.*

exterior, outer; — *superl.*, **extrēmus**, outermost, farthest, extreme, last.

extrahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum, draw out, spend.

F.

faber, **fabrī**, *m.*, mechanic, engineer.

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, fable.

facile, *adv.* (*of facilis*), easily.

facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, do, make.

factum, -ī, *n.*, deed.

faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautum**, favor.

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.

ferē, *adv.*, almost.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, carry, bring.

fidēs, **fidei**, *f.*, faith, confidence, pledge.

fidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, faithful.

filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

filius, -ī, *m.*, son.

finis, -is, *m.*, end, border; *pl.*, territory.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighboring (bordering on); *masc. as noun*, neighbor.

fiō, **ferī**, **factus sum**, be made, be done, happen, become.

firmus, -a, -um, firm, strong.

fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, flood, waves.

flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.

fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave.

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune.

fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch.

frāter, **frātris**, *m.*, brother.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain; *with rēs*, provisions.

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain.

fruor, **frui**, **frutus** and **fructus sum**, enjoy.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.

fugīō, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**, flee.

fungor, **fungī**, **fūctus sum**, perform.

G.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba, a Roman name.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, a country nearly the same as modern France.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic.

Gallus, -i, *m.*, Gaul, *an inhabitant of the country Gaul.*

Genāva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, *a town in Switzerland.*

genus, -eris, *n.*, race, kind, sort.

Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; *masc. as noun*, a German.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, carry on, do; bellum gerere, wage war.

gladius, -i, *m.*, sword.

gracilis, -e, *adj.*, slender.

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.

grātia, -ae, *f.*, favor, influence.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, welcome.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, deeply.

H.

habēō, habēre, habui, habuit, have, hold.

Hannibal, -is, *m.*, Hannibal, *a famous Carthaginian general.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; *as a noun*, a Helvetian.

hiberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.

Homērus, -i, *m.*, Homer, *the Greek poet.*

homō, hominis, *m.*, man, human being.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, honorable.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, encourage, urge, exhort.

hortus, -i, *m.*, garden.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy (*in war*).

hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*, culture.

I (vowel).

ibi, *adv.*, there.

Icani, -ōrum, *m.*, the Icani.

idem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, am unacquainted with.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that, that well known.

Imanuentius, -i, *m.*, Imanuentius.

impedimentum, -i, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hinder, impede.

impeditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of impediō used as an adj.*, obstructed, difficult.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander-in-chief.

imperium, -i, *n.*, command, rule, power.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command, order.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, charge, attack, fury.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden; *dē imprōvisō*, unexpectedly.

in, *prep. with acc. and abl.*;
1. *with acc.*, into, to, against;
2. *with abl.*, in, on.

in-, *negative prefix*, un (*as inimicus = in + amicus, unfriend, enemy*).

incendium, -i, *n.*, burning.

incendō, -ere, -endi, -cēsum, set on fire, burn.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, fall into, in with, or upon.

incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, urge on, arouse, incite.

incola, -ae, *m. and f.*, inhabitant.

incolō, -colere, -colui, -cultum, inhabit, dwell in.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, uninjured.

incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, incredible.

incursiō, -ōnis, *f.*, attack.

Indutiomarus, -i, *m.*, Indutiomarus.

inferō, -ferre, -intuli, -illātum, bear into or against; bellum inferre, wage offensive war.

inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, below, low; — *comp.*, inferior, lower, inferior; — *superl.* infimus or imus, lowest (at the bottom of).

ingēns, -gentis, *adj.*, huge, vast.

inimicus, -i, *m.*, enemy (*as a private person*).

initium, -i, *n.*, beginning.

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injury.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, want.

instituō, -ere, -i, -utum, put in place, found, institute.

instruō, -struere, -struxi, -structum, draw up, form.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, understand.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, kill.

interim, *adv.*, in the meanwhile.

intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, cease, go down.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask, interrogate.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.

introitus, -ūs, *m.*, entrance.

inveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, find.

ipse, -a, -um, *intensive pron.*, my-, your-, him-, etc., self.

is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, that.

iste, ista, istud, *dem. pron.*, that (*of yours*).

ita, *adv.*, so, thus.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

iter, itineris, *n.*, road, route, journey, march.

I (consonant).

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl.

iam, *adv.*, already, now.

iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, order, command.

iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge.

Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a Roman name.

iūnior, -ius, *adj.*, (*comp. of iuvenis*, young, contracted for iuvenior), younger, junior.

Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura mountains, in Switzerland.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law.

iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandi, *n.*, oath.

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just.

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; *as a noun*, young man.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, aid, help, assist.

L.

Labiēnus, -i, *m.*, Labienus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants*.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labor.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, toil, labor.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, *f.*, Lacedæmon.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Lacedemonian.

lactus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, gay.

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

lātē, *adv.*, widely.

lātītūdō, -dinis, *f.*, width, breadth.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, praise.

lēgātus, -i, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador.

lēgātīō, -ōnis, *f.*, legation, embassy.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion, *a division of the Roman army*.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, belonging to the legion.

legō, legere, lēgi, lēctum, read (*also gather*).

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.

libenter, *adv.*, gladly.

liber, -bri, *m.*, book.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

liberē, *adv.*, freely.

liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* of liber, children.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set free, liberate.

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

lītus, litoris, *n.*, shore.

locus, -i, *m.*, (*pl.* loca, *n.*), place.

longē, *adv.*, far.

longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, length.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long.

lūdus, -i, *m.*, game.

Lugotorix, -igis, *m.*, Lugotorix.

lupus, -i, *m.*, wolf.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.

Lysander, -dri, *m.*, Lysander.

M.

magister, -tri, *m.*, master, teacher.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistracy, magistrate.

magnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, size, magnitude.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, great.

mālō, mälle, mālui, *no supine*, wish more, prefer.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, entrust, commit.

Mandubracius, -i, *m.*, Mandubracius, *a chieftain of the Trinobantes*.

manē, *adv.*, in the morning.

maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus, remain, wait.

manipulus, -i, *m.*, manipule, *a small company of soldiers*.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, *also band*.

Mārcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus.

mare, maris, *n.*, sea.

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, maritime, on the sea.

Massilia, -ae, *f.*, Massilia, *the Latin name of Marseilles.*

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.

mātūrē, *adv.*, early.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe.

maximē, *adv.*, very greatly.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle of.

memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.

mercātor, -tōris, *m.*, merchant.

meridiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of noon.

metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear.

meus, -a, -um, *possess. pron.*, my, mine.

miles, militis, *m.*, soldier.

militāris, -e, *adj.*, military.

militia, -ae, *f.*, military service.

mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, thousand; *pl.*, millia, -um, *n.*, *followed by gen.*, thousand.

minimē, *adv.*, not at all.

miror, āri, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire.

misser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched.

mittō, mittere, misi, missum, send.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn, advise, admonish.

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.

morbus, -i, *m.*, disease.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, delay.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom; *pl.*, manners.

motus, -ūs, *m.*, movement, up-rising.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.

muller, -eris, *f.*, woman,

multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, multitude.

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *pl.*, many.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī or -li, -itum, fortify.

mūnitio, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.

mūnitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*perf. pass. part. of mūniō*), fortified.

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty.

N.

nam, *conj.*, for.

nanciscor, -ī, nactus, or nactus sum, get, reach.

narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, narrate.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character.

nātus, -ūs, *m.*, birth. *Used only in abl. sing.*; māiōrēs nātū, elders by birth, old men.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.

nāvālis, -e, *adj.*, naval.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.

-ne, *enclitic interrog. particle, simply denoting a question; in indirect questions sometimes whether.*

nē, *negative particle, that . . . not, lest, not to; nē . . . quidem, not even.*

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.

negōtium, -ī, *n.*, business, trouble.

nēmō, -inis, *m.*, nobody, no one. *Not used in gen. and abl., the corresponding forms of nullus being used instead.*

neque (*nec*), *conj.*, and not, nor ;
neque . . . neque, neither . . .
 nor.

niger, -*gra*, -*grum*, *adj.*, black.

nihil, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.

nōbillis, -*e*, *adj.*, noble, of high
 birth, famous.

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

noceō, -*ēre*, -*uī*, -*itum*, harm,
 injure.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, *no supine*,
 be unwilling.

nōmen, -*minis*, *n.*, name.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōnne, *interrog. adv.* (*intro-*
ducing a question expecting the
answer "yes"), not ?

nōnnullus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, some
(seldom used except in the pl.).

noster, -*tra*, -*trum*, *possess.*
pron., our.

novus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, new.

nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night.

nūllus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, no, not
 any, no one.

num, *interrog. particle* (*expect-*
ing the answer "no"), *in in-*
direct questions, whether.

numerus, -*i*, *m.*, number.

nūntiō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, re-
 port, announce.

nūntius, -*i*, *m.*, messenger.

nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

obses, **obsidis**, *m.*, hostage.

obtineō, -*ēre*, -*uī*, -*tentum*,
 hold.

occāsus, -*ūs*, *m.*, setting ; **sōlis**
occāsus, sunset.

occidō, -*cidere*, -*cidi*, -*cisum*,
 kill.

occultō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*, hide.
occupō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, seize,
 take.

octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*,
 eighty.

ōlim, *adv.*, once.

omnino, *adv.*, altogether, in all.

omnis, -*e*, *adj.*, all.

opera, -*ae*, *f.*, work.

oportet, *imp. v.*, it is necessary,
 it ought.

oppidum, -*i*, *n.*, town, walled
 town.

oppugnō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*,
 attack, storm.

opus, **operis**, *n.*, work.

ōrātiō, -*ōnis*, *f.*, speech, oration.

ōrdō, **ōrdinis**, *m.*, rank, order.

Orgetorix, -*igis*, *m.*, Orgetorix,
a Helvetian nobleman.

orior, -*iri*, **ortus**, arise.

ōrnō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, adorn,
 deck.

P.

palūs, -*ūdis*, *f.*, marsh, swamp.

pār, **paris**, *adj.*, equal.

parcō, -*ere*, **pepercī** (**parsi**),
parsūrus (**parcītūrus**), spare.

parēns, -*entis*, *c.*, parent.

pāreō, -*ēre*, **pārui**, **pāritūrus**,
 obey.

parō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, pre-
 pare, furnish.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part.

parvus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, small,
 little.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mille passūs**, a Roman mile.

pater, **patriā**, *m.*, father.

pator, **pātī**, **passus sum**, allow.

patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native land.

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, used almost exclusively in the plural, few.

paulisper, *adv.*, gradually.

paulum, *adv.*, a little.

pax, **pācis**, *f.*, peace.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, a sum of money (*originally* cattle; cf. **pecus**).

pecus, -oris, *n.*, flock, cattle.

pedes, **pedītis**, *m.*, foot-soldier.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, on foot, of infantry.

pellō, -ere, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, repel, drive off.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through.

per-, *adv.*, in composition, very (*as per-facilis*, very easy).

perfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter.

periculum, -ī, *n.*, peril, danger.

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilful, experienced.

permittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, grant.

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, disturb.

Persa, -ae, *m.*, a Persian.

persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, pursue, pursue and overtake.

perspicō, -ere, -spēxī, -spec-tum, see.

persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade.

pertereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten.

pertineō, -ere, -uī, *no supine*, hold through, extend.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb greatly, throw into confusion.

pervenīō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come through, arrive.

pēs, **pedis**, *m.*, foot, as part of the body, and also as a measure.

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, seek, ask.

pectūra, -ae, *f.*, picture, painting.

pilum, -ī, *n.*, javelin.

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.

polliceor, -ārī, **pollicitus sum**, promise.

pōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positum**, place, put, pitch (of a camp).

pōns, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge.

populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, port, harbor.

possum, **posse**, **potui**, *no supine*, be able, can, have power.

post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind; also *adv.*, afterwards.

postea, *adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, next, following.

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand.

potēns, **potentis**, *adj.*, powerful.

potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power.

potior, **potirī**, **potitus sum**, get possession of.

praeclūdō, -ere, -aī, -sum, shut off, close.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, rob, plunder.

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum,
carry before, prefer.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
place in command of.

praefigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum,
set in front.

**praemittō, -ere, -misi, -mis-
sum,** send forward.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
prepare.

**praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui,
-positum,** place before, put in
command of.

praesidium, -i, n., guard, escort,
protection.

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
command, be at the head of.

primōrēs, -um, m. pl., chief
men.

primus, -a, -um, adj., first.

princeps, principis, m., chief.

prior, prius, adj., earlier, for-
mer.

prō, prep. with abl., before, in
defence of, for.

**probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ap-
prove.**

Procillus, -i, m., a Roman name.

*Gaius Valerius Procillus was
sent by Caesar as envoy to Ari-
ovistus.*

proellum, -i, n., battle.

profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure.

**proficiscor, proficisci, profec-
tus sum,** set out, depart.

**prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, go (or come) forth or
forward.**

**prohibeō, -ēre, -hibui, -hibi-
tum,** keep from, hinder from,
check.

prope, adv. and prep., almost,
near.

prōperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
hurry.

**propior, propius, adj. (comp.
of stem of prope, near),** nearer;
superl. proximus, -a, -um,
nearest, next.

propter, prep. with acc., on ac-
count of.

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
make sallies (in defence).

prōsequor, -i, secutus sum,
follow.

prospectus, -ūs, m., view for-
ward, sight, prospect.

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prō-
futūrus,** be profitable.

provehō, -ere, -vēxi, -vēctum,
carry.

prōvideō, -ēre, -vidi, -visum,
foresee, provide.

prōvincia, -ae, f., province.

proximus. See propior.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., pub-
lic.

puella, -ae, f., girl.

puer, puerī, m., boy.

pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.,
beautiful, pretty.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.

Q.

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
forty.

**quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesi-
tum,** ask, inquire about.

quam, adv., than, as.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., interrog.,
 how great? how much? *rel.*,
 as great, as; **tantus . . .**
quantus, so great . . . as.
quārtus, -a, -um, ordinal num.
adj., fourth.
quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four.
-que, enclitic conj., and, to be
translated before the word at
the end of which it stands.
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron.,
 who, which, what; *indef.*,
 any.
quidam, quaedam, quoddam,
indef. pron., a certain (one,
etc.).
quidem, conj. *Often not to be*
translated, except by empha-
sizing the word before it;
sometimes, indeed, at least;
nō . . . quidem, not even.
quīn, conj., that, but that.
quinque, indecl. num. adj., five.
quintus, -a, -um, ordinal num.
adj., fifth.
quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron.,
 who? which? what?
quis, quae (qua), quid, indef.
pron., used after sī, nisi, nē,
and num, any, any one, any-
thing.
quisquam, quidquam, indef.
pron., used only after negatives
and negative expressions, any
one, anything.
quisque, quaeque, quidque,
indef. pron., each, each one,
every.
quot, indecl. pron., interrog.,
 how many? *relative, as many*
as.

R.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., in small
 bodies.
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-
tum, take back; *also reflexive,*
sē recipere, betake oneself,
 retire, withdraw, retreat.
rēctus, -a, -um, adj., right.
redeō, -ire, -li, -itum, go back,
 return.
redūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum,
 lead back.
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, re-
 pair.
rēgīna, -ae, f., queen.
regiō, -ōnis, f., region.
rēgnum, -i, n., kingdom, royal
 power.
relinquō, -linquere, -liqui, -lic-
tum, leave.
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remain-
 ing, rest of.
remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi,
-mānsūrus, remain, stay.
remus, -i, m., oar.
renūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
 report, announce.
repellō, -ere, reppuli, repul-
sum, drive back.
repentinus, -a, -um, adj., sudden.
reperiō, -ire, repperi, reper-
tum, find, find out.
rēs, rei, f., thing.
resistō, -ere, restiti, no supine,
 resist, withstand.
respondeō, -ēre, respondi, re-
sponsum, answer, reply.
rēs publica, rei publicae, f.
(really a noun, rēs, and adj.,
pūblica), state, republic.

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum,
retain, hold back.

revertor, reverti, reversus sum
and revertō, -ere, -verti,
-versum, the deponent forms
used in the present system,
return, go or come back.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call
back.

rex, rēgis, m., king.

Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine, divid-
ing Gaul from Germany.

Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone,
a river of southern Gaul.

ripa, -ae, f., bank of a river,
shore of a lake.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman;
masc. as subst., a Roman.

rosa, -ae, f., rose.

S.

saepe, adv., often.

salūs, -ūtis, f., safety.

satis, adv., enough.

sciō, scīre, scivī, scitum,
know.

scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum,
write.

scūtum, -i, n., shield.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., second,
favorable; rēs secundae, pros-
perity.

sed, conj., but.

Segontiaci, -ōrum, m., the Se-
gontiaci.

sēmita, -ae, f., path.

semper, adv., always.

senātus, -ūs, m., senate.

senex, senis, m., old man.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of
or belonging to the Sequani,
a Gallic tribe; masc. as subst.,
a Sequanian; pl., the Sequani.
sequor, sequi, secūtus sum,
follow.

serva, -ae, f., female servant,
slave.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, watch,
guard.

servus, -i, m., slave, servant.

sex, indecl. num. adj., six.

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
sixty.

sextus, -a, -um, ordinal num.
adj., sixth.

sī, conj., if.

sīc, adv., thus, in such a manner.

signum, -i, n., sign, standard,
signal.

silva, -ae, f., woods, forest.

silvestris, -e, adj., wooded.

similis, -e, adj., like, similar.

sine, prep. with abl., without.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left
(hand, etc.).

socius, -i, m., ally.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be
accustomed.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum,
loose; **solvere nāvēs,** put to
sea.

soror, sorōris, f., sister.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum,
reject.

spes, speī, f., hope, expectation.

statim, adv., immediately.

statuō, -ere, -i, statūtum, de-
cide.

stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, stand.
sub, prep. usually with abl., under,
 at the foot of, close to; *used with*
the acc. after verbs of motion.

subducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum,
 draw up.

subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum,
 follow close upon, follow.

succidō, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum, cut
 down.

sudis, -is, f., stake.

sui, sibi, sē, reflexive pron. of the
third person; no nom., him-
self, herself, itself, him, her, it.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be.

summa, -ae, f., sum, chief.

summus, -a, -um, adj., highest,
 topmost, greatest, *often at the*
top of or to the top of (superl.
of the root of superus).

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sur-
 pass, defeat.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
 be over, survive.

superus, -a, -um, adj., upper,
 higher; *comp., superior; su-*
perl., summus.

suprā, adv., above.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion.

suspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spec-
tum, suspect.

sustineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum,
 hold up (under), withstand.

suus, -a, -um, possess. pron.,
third person, his, her, its,
their.

T.

tam, adv., so, so greatly, so much.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, still,
 yet, notwithstanding.

Tamesis, -is, m., the Thames, *a*
river of Britain.

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactum,
 touch.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum, hide.

tēlum, -ī, n., (missile) weapon.

tempestās, -tātis, f., storm,
 tempest.

tempus, -oris, n., time.

teneō, -ēre, -ui, tentum, hold.

tenis, -e, adj., gentle, soft.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land.

terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, frighten.

tertius, -a, -um, ordinal num.
adj., third.

testūdō, -inis, f., testudo, shelter.

theātrum, -ī, n., theatre.

Themistoclēs, -is, m., Themis-
 tocles.

timeō, -ēre, -ui, no supine, fear.

timor, -oris, m., fear, alarm.

Titus, -ī, m., Titus, *a Roman*
name.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, en-
 tire, all.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,
 give over, betray.

trāns, prep. with acc., across.

trānseō, -ire, -īi, -itum, go
 across, cross.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., three
 hundred.

trēs, tria, num. adj., three.

Trinobantēs, -um, m., Trino-
 bantes, *a people of Britain.*

tripertitō, adv., in three divi-
 sions.

tū, tui, tibi, tē, personal pron.,
second person, thou, you; pl.,
vōs, you.

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus)
 sum, guard, protect.
tum, adv., then.
turris, -is, f., tower, turret.
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.
tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., second
 person, thy, your.

U.

ubi, adv., *interrog.* and *rel.*,
 where (*sometimes* when).
undique, adv., on or from all
 sides.
ūnus, -a, -um, (gen. ūnūs),
num adj., one, (*sometimes* the
 only one alone).
urbs, urbis, f., city.
ūsus, -ūs, m., advantage, expe-
 rience, use; *also* need.
ut, conj. with subj., that, in order
 that, so that; *also* **adv.,** as,
 when.
ūtīlis, -e, adj., useful.
utor, uti, usus sum, use, em-
 ploy.
uxor, -ōris, f., wife.

V.

vagor, -ārī, vagātus sum,
 wander.
valeō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus,
 be strong.
vallum, -i, n., palisade, wall.
vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lay
 waste, devastate.

vectigal, -ālis, n., tax.
vēlōciter, adv., swiftly.
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift.
veniō, -ire, vēni, ventum, come.
ventus, -i, m., wind.
vereor, -ērī, veritus, fear, be
 afraid of.
Vergilius, -i, m., Virgil, a
 Roman.
vērus, -ā, -um, adj., true.
vescor, -i, eat.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj.,
 your.
vetō, -āre, -ui, -itum, forbid.
via, -ae, f., way, road.
vigilia, -ae, f., watch.
viginti, num. adj., twenty.
vincō, -ere, vici, victum, con-
 quer.
vir, viri, m., man.
virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.
virtūs, -ūtis, f., bravery, virtue.
vīs, vis, f., force; *pl.,* **virēs,**
 viriūm, strength.
vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, avoid.
vivō, -ere, vixi, victum, live.
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call.
volō, velle, volui, wish, be will-
 ing.
voluntās, -ātis, f., will, good
 will.
voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.
vōs. See tū.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 wound.
vulnus, -eris, n., wound.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

The figures 1, 2, 3, or 4 after a verb denote that the verb is regular and of the first, second, third, or fourth conjugation. Other abbreviations are the same as those used in the Latin-English vocabulary.

A

able (be), possum, posse, potuī.	advantage , ūsus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
about , dē (<i>with abl.</i>), circum (<i>with acc.</i>), circiter (<i>adv.</i>).	adverse , adversus, -a, -um.
absent (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.	adversity , rēs (rērum, <i>etc.</i>) adversae.
abundance , cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	affaires , rēs, rērum.
accomplish , efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.	advice , cōsiliū, -ī, <i>n.</i>
account (on account of), causā (<i>with gen.</i>), ob, propter (<i>with acc.</i>).	Aeduan (Haeduan), Aeduus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
accuse , accūsō, 1.	against , contrā, in, (<i>with acc.</i>).
accustom (oneself), cōnsuēsco, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.	age , aetās, -ātis, <i>f.</i> ; in or by age , nātū.
accustomed (be), solēō, -ēre, solitus sum (<i>semi-dep.</i>); cōnsuēsco, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.	agreeable , grātus, -a, -um.
across , trāns (<i>with acc.</i>).	aid , auxiliū, -ī, <i>n.</i> , iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum; prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus. [(<i>adv.</i>).
act , agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.	all , omnis, -e; in all , omninō
active , ācer, ācris, ācre.	Allobroges , Allobrogēs, -um, <i>m.</i>
admire , mīror, 1, <i>dep.</i>	ally , socius, -ī, <i>m.</i>
adorn , ōrnō, 1.	almost , ferē.
advance , prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.	alone , sōlus, -a, -um.
	already , iam.
	also , etiam.
	although , cum.
	altogether , omninō.
	always , semper.
	am. See be.

ambassador, *lĕgātus*, -ī, *m.*
among, *inter* (*with acc.*), *apud* (*with acc.*).
ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um.
and, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, -que; **and not**, *neque* (*nec*).
animal, *animal*, -ālis, *n.*
announce, *nūntiō*, 1; *renūntiō*, 1.
another, *alius*, -a, -um; **belong to another**, *aliĕnus*, -a, -um.
answer, *respondeō*, -ĕre, -dī, *respōnsum*.
any (*body or thing*), *aliquis*, -qua *or* -quae, -quid, (*also quis, qua or quae, quid*).
approach, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*
ardent, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
Arionist, *Arionistus*, -ī, *m.*
arms, *arma*, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, *exercitus*, -ūs, *m.*
around, *circum* (*with acc.*); **put around**, *circumdō*, -dare, -dedī, -datum.
arouse, *incitō*, 1.
arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, *perveniō*, -īre, -vĕnī, -ventum.
art, *ars*, *artis*, *f.*; **art of war**, *rēs militāris*.
as, *quam*, *cum*.
ascertain, *reperiō*, -īre, *repperī*, *reperitum*.
ask, *petō*, -ere, *petivī*, *petitum*; *quaerō*, -ere, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum*.
assemble, *conveniō*, -īre, -vĕnī, -ventum.
assert, *cōfirmō*, 1.
assist, *iuvō*, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtum*.
astonished (*be astonished*), *mīror*, 1, *dep.*

at, *in* (*with abl.*).
Athens, *Athēnae*, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*, *op-pugnō*, 1; **make an attack**, *impetum facere*.
attend, *adimadvertō*, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
attention (*pay*). *See attend.*
avoid, *vitō*, 1.
away, *ā(ab)*, *and*, *in composition*, *dē*; **lead away**, *ēducō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *dēducō*, -ere, *dūxī*, -ductum; **go away**, *abeō*, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum; **send away**, *dimittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum; **be away**, *absum*, -esse, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*, *dēsum*, -esse, -ful, -futūrus.

B.

back, *re* - *in comp.*, *as*: **take back**, *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **go back**, *redeō*, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum; **hold back**, *retineō*, -ĕre, -uī, -tentum.
bad, *malus*, -a, -um. [*n. pl.*]
baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum,
band, *manus*, -ūs, *f.*
bank, *rīpa*, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, *barbarus*, -ī, *m.*
battle, *proelium*, -ī, *n.*; *pūgna*, -ae, *f.*
be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*.
bear, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; **bear against**, *inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*. *See, also*, **bring**.
beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.
because of, *ob*, *propter*.
become, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.

before, ante, *prep. with acc.* ;
ante, *adv.* ; antequam, *conj.*
began, coepi, coepisse (*no pres-*
ent).
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*
behalf (*in behalf of*), prō
(*with abl.*).
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī,
crēditum.
Bellovacī, Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.*
between, inter (*with acc.*).
Bibracte, Bibracte, -is, *n.*
blind, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, ten-
tum.
birth, nātus, -ūs, *m.* ; *of high*
birth, nōbilis, -e.
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, 1.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
born (*be*), nāscor, nāscī, nātus
sum.
bound, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī,
-tentum.
boy, puer, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, portō, 1, ferō, ferre, tulī,
lātum ; **bring together**, cōn-
fero, -ferre, contulī, collātum ;
bring out, efferō, efferre, ex-
tulī, elātum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
but, sed, autem ; **but that**,
quā.

C.

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, vocō, 1, appellō, 1 ; **call**
together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, capere, cēpi,
captum. *See also take.*
care (*take*), cūrō, 1.
carry, portō, 1, (*see, also, bring*
and bear) ; **carry before**, prae-
ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
Casticus, Casticus, -ī, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.* ; cūrō, 1.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.* ; equi-
tēs, -um, (*pl. of eques*), *m.*
cavalry-man, eques, -itis, *m.*
celebrated, clārus, -a, -um.
censure, culpō, 1.
centurion, centuriō, -onis, *m.*
certain, certus, -a, -um ; **a cer-**
tain (*indefinite*), quīdam.
change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
character, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
check, prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī,
-hibitum.
cheerfully, libenter.
chief, princeps, -ipis, *m.* ; **com-**
mander-in-chief, imperātor,
-ōris, *m.*
children, liberī, -ōrum, *m.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
citizen, civis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -tis, *f.* [āctum.
collect, cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, co-
come, veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum ;

- come together**, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.*
command, *imperium, -ī, n.*
command, *iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum; imperō, 1; praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus; place in command, praepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum. [tor, -ōris, m.*
commander-in-chief, *imperā-*
companion, *comes, -itis, c.*
company, *comitēs, comitum.*
conceal, *cēlō, 1.*
conference, *colloquium, -ī, n.*
confidence, *fidēs, -eī, f.*
confusion, *(throw into), per-*
turbō, 1.
conquer, *superō, 1; vincō, vin-*
cere, vici, victum.
conqueror, *victor, -ōris, m.*
consider, *dēliberō, 1.*
consul, *cōsul, -ulis, m.*
consult, *dēliberō, 1.*
contend, *contendō, -ere, con-*
tendi, contentum.
Corinth, *Corinthus, -ī, f.*
Cornelia, *Cornēlia, -ae, f.*
council, *concilium, -ī, n.*
country, *terra, -ae, f.; native*
country, *patria, -ae, f.; coun-*
try, as distinguished from city,
rūs, rūris, n.
cross, *trāseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.*
crown, *corōna, -ae, f.*
culture, *hūmānitās, -ātis, f.*
custom, *mōs, mōris, m.*
- D.**
- daily**, *(adv.) cottidiē, (adj.)*
cottidiānus, -a, -um.
danger, *periculum, -ī, n.*
dare, *andeō, -ēre, ausus sum,*
(semi-dep.).
daughter, *fīlia, -ae, f.*
day, *diēs, -eī, m.*
dear, *cārus, -a, -um.*
decide, *cōstituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum.*
deck, *ōrnō, 1.*
deep, *altus, -a, -um.*
deeply, *(i.e. seriously), gravi-*
ter.
defeat, *superō, 1, vincō, -ere,*
vici, victum.
defend, *dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēn-*
sum; in defence of, prō, prep.
with abl.
deliberate, *dēliberō, 1.*
delight, *dēlectō, 1.*
demand, *pōstulō, 1.*
demonstrate, *dēmōnstrō, 1.*
departure, *profectiō, -ōnis, f.*
depth, *altitudō, -inis, f.*
desert, *relinquō, -ere, -liqui,*
-lictum. [-ūtum.
determine, *cōstituō, -ere, -ui,*
difficult, *difficilis, -e.*
diligence, *diligentia, -ae, f.*
dismiss, *dīmittō, -ere, -misi,*
-missum. [-um.
distant, *(most), extrēmus, -a,*
distant (be), absum, -esse, āfui,
āf-tūrus.
disturb greatly, *perturbō, 1.*
divide, *dividō, -ere, -visi, -visum.*
Divitiacus, *Divitiacus, -ī, m.*
do, *faciō, facere, feci, factum;*
agō, -ere, ēgi, āctum.
door, *porta, -ae, f.*
doubt, *dubitō, 1; there is no*
doubt, nōn dubium est.
doubtful, *dubius, -a, -um,*
dove, *columba, -ae, f.*

draw up, cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum;
drive back, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -igis, *m*.
 dwell in, incolō, -ere, -coluī, -cultum.

E.

eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f*.
early, mātūrē, *adv*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
eat, vescor, -ī, *no perf*.
eighty, octōgintā.
eminent, clārus, -a, -um.
encamp, cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
encourage, animum (animōs) cōfirmō, 1.
end, finis, -is, *m*.
endeavor, cōnor, 1, *dep*.
endure, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m*.; inimicus, -ī, *m*.
engage (in battle), committō, -ere, -misi, -missum, (proelium).
enjoy, fruor, fruī, frui^{us} and fructus sum.
enough, satis.
entire, tōtus, -a, -um.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m*.
equal, pār, paris.
escort, praesidium, -ī, *n*.
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem.

every (one), quisque, quaque, quidque; (**day**), cottidiē.
exhort, hortor, 1, *dep*.
expect, exspectō, 1.
experience, ūsus, -ūs, *m*.
experienced, peritus, -a, -um.
extend, pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
extreme, māximus, -a, -um; extrēmus, -a, -um.

F.

fable, fābula, -ae, *f*.
fail, dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus.
faith, fidēs, -eī, *f*.
faithful, fidus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum;
fall upon, accidō, -ere, -cidī;
fall into, in with, upon, incidō, -ere, -cidī.
famous, nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m*.
farther, longius, (*adv*.).
farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um.
father, pater, patris, *m*.
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.
favorable, secundus, -a, -um.
fear, timor, -ōris, *m*.; timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m*.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fight, pūgnō, 1.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
find out, reperīō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
finish, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum.
fire, ignis, -is, *m*.

first, *primus*, -a, -um.
five, *quīnque*.
flee, *fugiō*, -ae, *f.*
flight, *fuga*, -ae, *f.* [sum.
follow, *sequor*, *sequi*, *secutus*
following (*of time*), *posterus*,
 -a, -um.
fond of (*be*), *amō*, 1.
food, *frumentum*, -i, *n.*
foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*
foot-soldier, *pedes*, -itis, *m.*
for, *prō* (*with abl.*), *prep.*; *nam*,
conj.
force, *vīs*, *vīs*, *vī*, *vim*; *pl.* *vīrēs*,
vīrium, *f.*
forced (*march*), *māximus*, -a,
 -um.
forces (*military*), *cōpiæ*, -ārum,
f.
forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*
fortification, *mūnitio*, -ōnis, *f.*
(perf. part. of mūniō).
fortify, *mūniō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*
forty, *quadrāgintā*.
four, *quattuor*.
fourth, *quārtus*, -a, -um.
free, *liber*, -era, -erum; **set free**,
liberō, 1.
friend, *amicus*, -ī, *m.*
friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, *f.*
frighten, *terreō*, 2.
from, *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, (*all with abl.*).
furthest. *See farthest*.
fury, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*

G.

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, *m.*
Gallie, *Gallicus*, -a, -um.

garden, *hortus*, -ī, *m.*
garland, *corōna*, -ae, *f.*
gate, *porta*, -ae, *f.*
gather, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*;
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Gaul (*the country*), *Gallia*, -ae,
f.; (*an inhabitant of that*
country), *Gallus*, -ī, *m.*
gay, *laetus*, -a, -um.
general, *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, *Genāva*, -ae, *f.*
German, *Germānus*, -a, -um, (*as*
subst., *Germānus*, -ī, *m.*).
get possession of, *potior*, -īrī,
 -ītus sum.
gift, *dōnum*, -ī, *n.*
girl, *puella*, -ae, *f.*
give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*.
give up, *trādō*, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
glad, *laetus*, -a, -um.
gladly, *libenter*.
go, *eō*, *īre*, *ī* (*ivī*), *itum*; **go**
out or away, *exeō*; **go back**,
redeō; **go across**, *trāuseō*; **go**
away, *abeō*; **go out**, *ēgre-*
dior, -ī, -gressus sum; **go forth**,
prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
good, *bonus*, -a, -um.
grain, *frumentum*, -ī, *n.*
great, *māgnus*, -a, -um; **so great**,
tantus, -a, -um; **how great**,
quantus, -a, -um.
greater, *māior*, *māius*, *gen.*
māiōris.
Greece, *Graecia*, -ae, *f.*
Greek (*adj.*), *Graecus*, -a, -um;
(subst.) *Graecus*, -ī, *m.*
grief, *dolor*, -ōris, *m.*
grieve, *be grieved*, *doleō*, 2.
guard, *custōs*, -ōdis, *c.*; *praesid-*
ium, -ī, *n.*

H.

halt, cōsistō, -ere, -stiti.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.* [-ditum].
hand over, trādō, -ere, -didi.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
harm, noceō, 2.
happen, accidō, -ere, accidī.
hasten, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum; properō, 1.
have, habeo, 2.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
hear, audiō, 4.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
help, auxilium, -i, *n.*; iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.
Helvetian, Helvētius, -ī, *m.*
her, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).
herself, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um, (*superl. summus*); of high birth, nōbilis, -e.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
hinder, prohibeo, 2; impediō, 4.
his, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).
hold, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum; hold together, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; hold back, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; hold (in possession), obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; at home, domī.
Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *o.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how great, quantus, -a, -um.
how many, quot (*indecl.*).
huge, ingēns, -entis.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum
 coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
hurry, properō, 1.

I.

I, egō, meī, mihi, mē, mē.
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
immediately, statim.
impede, impediō, 4.
in, in (*with abl.*).
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
induce, adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
infantry (*adj.*, = of infantry), pedester, -tris, -tre.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*; grātia, -ae, *f.*; adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
inform, certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, 2.
inquire (about), quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.

intend, *est in animō.*

into, *in (with acc.).*

island, *insula, -ae, f.*

Italy, *Italia, -ae, f.*

its, *suus, -a, -um, (reflexive); eius (gen. of is, not reflexive).*

itself (reflexive), *suī, sibi, sē, sē; (intensive), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*

J.

javelin, *pilum, -ī, n.*

judge, *iudex, -icis, m.*

Julia, *Iulia, -ae, f.*

Jura, *Iūra, -ae, m.*

just, *iustus, -a, -um.*

K.

keep, *contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.*

keep from, *prohibeō, 2.*

kill, *occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.*

kind, *genus, -eris, n.*

king, *rēx, rēgis, m.*

kingdom, *rēgnum, -ī, n.*

knight, *eques, -itis, m.*

know, *sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.*

L.

Labienus, *Labiēnus, -ī, m.*

labor, *labor, -ōris, m.; labōrō, 1.*

lack, *inopia, -ae, f.*

land, *terra, -ae, f.*

language, *lingua, -ae, f. [-a, -um.*

large, *māgnus, -a, -um; multus,*

law, *lēx, lēgis, f.; iūs, iūris, n.*

lay waste, *vāstō, 1.*

lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum;*

lead away, *abdūcō, dēdūcō;*

lead out, *ēdūcō; lead on*, *addūcō. [-gnitum.*

learn, *cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī,*

leader, *dux, ducis, m. [tum.*

leave, *relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lic-*

left (i.e. left hand, etc.), *sinister,*

-tra, -trum; left over (re-

maining), *reliquus, -a, -um.*

legion, *legiō, -ōnis, f.*

length, *longitūdō, -inis, f.*

lest, *nē.*

letter, *epistula, -ae, f.*

lieutenant, *légātus, -ī, m.*

light, *lūx, lūcis, f.*

like, *similis, -e; as verb, amō, 1.*

line (of troops in motion), *āgmen, -inis, n. (of battle);*

aciēs, -ēī, f.

live (i.e. live in, dwell), *incolō,*

-ere, -uī, -cultum; live (i.e. be

alive), *vivō, -ere, vixī, vīctum.*

long, *longus, -a, -um; a long*

time, *diū (adv.).*

lose, *āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.*

love, *amō, 1.*

low, *īferus, -a, -um.*

M.

made (be), *fiō, fierī, factus sum.*

magistracy, *magistrātus, -ūs, m.*

magistrate, *magistrātus, -ūs, m.*

magnitude, *māgnitūdō, -inis, f.*

maiden, *virgō, -inis, f.*

make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.*

man, *homō, -inis, c. (a human*

being); vir, -ī, m. (an adult human male).

maniple, *manipulus, -ī, m.*

manners, *mōrēs*, -um, *m.*, (*pl. of mōs*).
many, *multī*, -ae, -a, (*pl. of multus*).
march, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*; **to march**, *iter facere*.
Marcus, *Mārcus*, -ī, *m.*
marsh, *palūs*, -ūdis, *f.*
Massilia, *Massilia*, -ae, *f.*
master (*of servants, etc.*), *dominus*, -ī, *m.*; (*of pupils, etc.*), *magister*, -trī, *m.*
meeting, *concilium*, -ī, *n.*
memory, *memoria*, -ae, *f.*
merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris, *m.*
messenger, *nūntius*, -ī, *m.*
middle of, *medius*, -a, -um.
military, *militāris*, -e; **military service**, *militia*, -ae, *f.*; **military forces**, *cōpia*, -arum, *f.*
mind, *mēns*, *mentis*, *f.*; *animus*, -ī, *m.*
mistress, *domina*, -ae, *f.*
money, *pecūnia*, -ae, *f.*
month, *mēnsis*, -is, *m.*
mother, *māter*, -tris, *f.*
mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, *m.*
move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.
much, *multus*, -a, -um.
multitude, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f.*
my, *meus*, -a, -um.

N.

name, *nōmen*, -inis, *n.* [*f. pl.*].
narrowness, *angustiae*, -arum,
nation, *nātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
native country, *patria*, -ae, *f.*
nature, *nātūra*, -ae, *f.*
near, *ad* (*with acc.*).

necessary, *necesse*, *indecl. adj.*
neighbor, *finitimus*, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, *finitimus*, -a, -um.
neither . . . nor, *neque* (*nec*) . . . *neque* (*nec*).
nevertheless, *tamen*.
new, *novus*, -a, -um.
next, *proximus*, -a, -um.
night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*
no, no one, *nūllus*, -a, -um.
noble, *nōbilis*, -e.
nobody, *nēmō*, -inis, *m.*, (*not used in gen. and abl.*).
not, *nōn*, *nōnne* (*in questions*), *nē* (*in prohibitions, wishes, and final clauses*); **and not**, *neque* (*nec*); **not even**, *nē . . . quidem*.
nothing, *nihil*, *n.*, (*indecl.*).
notice, *animadvertō*, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
notwithstanding, *tamen*.
now, *nunc*, *iam*.
number, *numerus*, -ī, *m.*

O.

oath, *iūsiūrāndum*, *iūrisiūrānī*, *n.*
obey, *pāreō*, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
of, de (*with abl.*).
often, *saepe*.
old, *antiquus*, -a, -um; **old man**, *senex*, *senis*, *m.*; **older**, *māior*, *nātū*.
one, *ūnus*, -a, -um; **one . . . another**, *alius . . . alius*; **one . . . the other (of two)**, *alter . . . alter*.
open, *apertus*, -a, -um.
oration, *orātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*

order, *ōrdō*, -inis, *m.*, (rank);
imperium, -ī, *n.*, (command);
to order, *imperō*, 1; *iubeō*,
 -ēre, *iūssī*, *iūssum*.

Orgetorix, *Orgetorix*, -īgis, *m.*

other, *alius*, -a, -ud; **other of**
 two, *alter*, -era, -erum.

ought, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

our, *noster*, -tra, -trum.

over (be), *praesum*, -esse, -fuī,
 -futūrus.

overcome, *superō*, 1.

owe, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

P.

pace, *passus*, -ūs, *m.*

pain, *dolor*, -ōris, *m.*; **be pained**,
doleō, 2.

parent, *parēns*, *parentis*, *c.*

parley, *colloquium*, -ī, *n.*

part, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*

peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, *f.*

people, *populus*, -ī, *m.*

perceive, *cōspiciō*, -ere, -spexī,
 -spectum.

perform, *fungor*, -ī, *fūctus*
sum.

persuade, *persuādeō*, -ēre, -suāsī,
 -suāsūm.

pick (from), *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī,
 -lēctum.

picture, *pictūra*, -ae, *f.*

pitch (a camp), *pōnō*, -ere,
posuī, *positum*.

place, *locus*, -ī, *m.*, (*pl.*, *loci*,
-ōrum, *n.*); *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*,
positum; **place over or in**
command, *praepōnō*, -ere,
-posuī, *-positum*; **to that**
place, *eō*.

plan, *cōnsilium*, -ī, *n.*

pleasant, *grātus*, -a, -um.

please, *dēlectō*, 1.

pleasing, *grātus*, -a, -um.

pleasure, *voluptās*, -ātis, *f.*

plenty, *cōpia*, -ae, *f.*

poem, *carmen*, -inis, *n.*

poet, *poēta*, -ae, *m.*

position, *locus*, -ī, *m.*; **take**
a position, *cōnsidō*, -ere,
-sēdī, *-sessum*; *cōnsistō*, -ere,
-stitī.

possession (get), *potior*, -īrī,
-itus sum.

power, *potestās*, -ātis, *f.*, *impe-*
rium, -ī, *n.*; **royal power**,
rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

powerful, *potēns*, -entis.

praise, *laudō*, 1.

prefer, *mālō*, *mālle*, *mālūī*; *prae-*
ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

prepare, *parō*, 1. [*affutūrus*.

present (be), *adsum*, -esse, *affuī*,

produce, *efferrō*, -ferre, *extulī*,
ēlātum.

Procillus, *Procillus*, -ī, *m.*

procure, *parō*, 1.

profitable (be), *prōsum*, *prō-*
desse, *prōfuī*, -futūrus. [*sum*.

promise, *polliceor*, -ēri, *pollicitus*

proper, *idōneus*, -a, -um.

prosperity, *rēs* (*rērum*, *etc.*)
secundae.

protect, *dēfendō*, -ere, -dī,
 -fēnsūm.

protection, *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*

province, *prōvincia*, -ae, *f.*

public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um.

pupil, *discipulus*, -ī, *m.*

put around, *circumdō*, -dare,
-dedī, -datum.

Q.

queen, *rēgina*, -ae, *f.*
quick, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.
quickly, *celeriter*.

R.

ran *α*, *ōrdō*, -inis, *m.*
rapidity, *celeritās*, -ātis, *f.*
read, *legō*, -ēre, *lēgī*, *lēctum*.
ready, *parātus*, -a, -um.
reason, *causa*, -ae, *f.*
region, *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
remain, *maneō*, -ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsūrus*; *remaneō*, -ēre, -*mānsī*, -*mānsūrus*; *supersum*, -esse, -ful.
remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um.
remember, *memoriā teneō*, 2.
render, *ferō*, -ferre, *tuli*, *lātum*.
repell, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*. [*spōnsum*.]
reply, *respondeō*, -ēre, -*dī*, *re-*
report, *nūntiō*, 1; *renūntiō*, 1.
republic, *rēs pūblica*.
repulse, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*.
resist, *resistō*, -ere, -*stitī*, *no supine*.
rest, *quies*, -ētis, *f.*; **the rest of**, *reliquus*, -a, -um.
restrain, *contineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*, -tentum.
retain, *retineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*, -tentum.
retire. *See retreat*.
retreat, *recipiō*, -ere, -*cēpī*, -*ceptum*, *with the refl. pronouns mē, sē, etc.*
return, *revertor*, -ī, *reversus sum*; *redeō*, -ire, -*ī*, -itum.
Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, *m.*

Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -ī, *m.*
right, *iūs*, *iūris*, *n.*; **right** (*hand etc.*), *dexter*, -tra, -trum.
ripe, *mātūrus*, -a, -um.
river, *flūmen*, -inis, *n.*
Roman, (*adj.*), *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; (*subst.*), *Rōmānus*, -ī, *m.*
Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, *f.*
rose, *rosa*, -ae, *f.*
route, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*
row, *ōrdō*, -inis.
royal power, *rēgnum*, -ī, *n.*
run, *currō*, *currere*, *cucurri*, *cursum*.

S.

safe, *tūtus*, -a, -um.
safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, *f.*
sailor, *nauta*, -ae, *m.*
same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.
say, *dīcō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictum*.
scout, *explōrātōr*, -ōris, *m.*
sea, *mare*, -is, *n.*
seashore, *lītus*, -oris, *n.*
second, *secundus*, -a, -um.
see, *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *vīsum*; *cō-*
spiciō, -ere, -*spexī*, -*spectum*.
seek, *petō*, -ere, *petīvī*, *petītum*.
seize, *occupō*, 1; *capiō*, -ere, -*cēpī*, *captum*.
select, *dēligō*, -ere, -*lēgī*, -*lēctum*.
self, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*.
senate, *senātus*, -ūs, *m.*
send, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missum*,
send away, *dimittō*, -ere, -*mīsī*, -*missum*.
separate, *dīvidō*, -ere, -*vīsī*, -*vīsum*.
Sequanian, *Sēquanus*, -ī, *m.*
servant, *servus*, -ī, *m.*; *serva*, -ae, *f.*
set free, *liberō*, 1.

set out , proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum.	something , aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.
setting , occāsus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .	son , filius, -ī, <i>m</i> .
severe , ācer, ācris, ācre; gravis , -e.	song , carmen, -inis, <i>n</i> .
sharp , ācer, ācris, ācre.	soul , animus, -ī, <i>m</i> .
sharply , ācriter.	spare , parcō, -ere, peperci (parsī), parsūrus (parcītūrus).
shield , scūtum, -ī, <i>n</i> .	speech , ōrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
ship , nāvis, -is, <i>f</i> .	speed , celeritās, -tātis, <i>f</i> .
shore , litus, -ōris, <i>n</i> .	spend the winter , hiemō, 1.
short , brevis, -e.	spirit , animus, -ī, <i>m</i> . [tum.
shout , clāmōr, -ōris, <i>m</i> .	spy , cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-
show , dēmōnstrō, 1.	stand , stō, stāre, stetī, statum;
sides (on all sides), undique (<i>adv.</i>).	stand one's ground , take a stand, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
sign , signum, -ī, <i>n</i> .	standard , signum, -ī, <i>n</i> .
similar , similis, -e.	state , civitās, -ātis, <i>f</i> .
since , cum.	still (<i>adv.</i>), tamen.
sister , soror, -ōris, <i>f</i> .	stone , lapis, -idis, <i>m</i> .
six , sex.	storm , tempestās, -ātis, <i>f</i> .; op-
sixth , sextus, -a, -um.	pūgnō, 1; take by storm , expūgnō, 1.
sixty , sexāgintā.	story , fābula, -ae, <i>f</i> .
size , māgnitūdō, -inis, <i>f</i> .	strength , vis, vis, vī, vim; <i>pl.</i> vīrēs, virium, <i>f</i> .
skill , ars, artis, <i>f</i> .	strengthen , cōnfirmō, 1.
skilful , perītus, -a, -um.	strive , contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum.
slaughter , caedēs, -is, <i>f</i> .	strong (be), valeō, 2.
slave , servus, -ī, <i>m</i> .; serva , -ae, <i>f</i> .	suitable , idōneus, -a, -um.
slay , occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.	summer , aestās, -ātis, <i>f</i> .
slender , gracilis, -e.	summon , convocō, 1.
small , parvus, -a, -um.	sun , sōl, sōlis, <i>m</i> .; sunset , sōlis occāsus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
so (of degree), tam; so . . . as, tam . . . quam; so (of manner or consequence), ita; so great , tantus, -a, -um.	superior (be), superō, 1.
soldier , miles, -itis, <i>m</i> .; foot-soldier , pedes, -itis, <i>m</i> .	supplies , commeātus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
somebody , aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.	surpass , superō, 1.
	surrender , deditiō, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
	surrender (<i>verb</i>), trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum. [datum.
	surround , circumdō, -dare, -dedī,

suspicion, *sūspiciō, -ōnis, f.*
swamp, *palūs, -ūdis, f.*
swift, *celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.*
swiftly, *vēlōciter.*
swiftness, *celeritās, -ātis, f.*
sword, *gladius, -ī, m.*

T.

table, *mēnsa, -ae, f.*
take, *occupō, 1; capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; take by storm, expūgnō, 1; take a position, cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī; take back, recipiō.*
take care, *cūrō, 1.*
tax, *vectīgal, -ālis, n.*
teacher, *magister, -trī, m.*
tell, *nārrō, 1.*
tempest, *tempestās, -ātis, f.*
ten, *decem (indecl.).*
tenth, *decimus, -a, -um.*
territory, *finēs, -ium, m., (pl. of finis); ager, -grī, m.; terra, -ae, f.*
than, *quam.*
that, *ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; that (of yours), iste, ista, istud; that, so that, in order that, ut; that not, nē; that, but that, quān.*
their, *suus, -a, -um, (reflexive), eōrum, eārum, (gen. pl. of is, not reflexive).*
there, *ibi.*
thing, *rēs, rei, f.*
think, *putō, 1; arbitror, 1, dep.; existimō, 1; cōgitō, 1.*
third, *tertius, -a, -um.*
this, *hic, haec, hōc.*

thither, *eō.*
thou, *tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tū, tē.*
thousand, *mille; pl., milia.*
three, *trēs, tria.*
three hundred, *trecentī, -ae, -a.*
through, *per (with acc.).*
throw, *iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; throw together, coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum; throw into confusion, perturbō, 1.*
thy, *tuus, -a, -um.*
time, *tempus, -oris, n.*
tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
Titus, *Titus, -ī, m.*
to, *ad, in, (with acc.).*
together, *con in composition, as call together, convocō, 1; come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; throw together, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.*
toil, *labor, -ōris, m.; labōrō, 1.*
tongue, *lingua, -ae, f.*
top of, *summus, -a, -um.*
towards, *ad (with acc.).*
tower, *turris, -is, f.*
town, *oppidum, -ī, n.*
tree, *arbor, -oris, f.*
troops, *cōpiae, -ārum, f.*
true, *vērus, -a, -um. [tum.*
trust, *crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditry, cōnor, 1, dep.*
turret, *turris, -is, f.*
twenty, *vīgintī.*
two, *duō, -ae, -ō.*
two hundred, *ducentī, -ae, -a.*

U.

under, *sub (with abl. except after verbs of motion; then with acc.).*

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

unfavorable, adversus, -a, -um ; aliēnus, -a, -um.

unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.

unless, nisi.

unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.

urge, hortor, 1, *dep.*

urge on, incitō, 1.

use, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

utmost, māximus, -a, -um ; summus, -a, -um.

V.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

vast, ingēns, -entis.

very, to be expressed by the *superl.* or sometimes by *per in composition.*

victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

village, vicus, -i, *m.*

violence, vis, vis, *f.*

violent, ācer, -cris, -cre.

violently, ācritēr (*adv.*).

Virgil, Vergilius, -i, *m.*

virgin, virgō, -inis, *f.*

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W.

wage war, bellum gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum ; **wage offensive war**, bellum inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum.

wait for, exspectō, 1.

wall, mūrus, -i, *m.*

want, inopia, -ae, *f.*

war, bellum, -i, *n.*

warn, moneō, 2.

war-vessel, nāvis longa.

waste (lay waste), vāstō, 1.

watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*

weapon, tēlum, -i, *n.*

weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.

weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

welcome, grātus, -a, -um.

welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, cum.

where, ubi.

whether, num.

which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

white, albus, -a, -um.

who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

why ? cūr.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

width, lātitudō, -inis, *f.*

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*

willing (be), volō, velle, volui.

wind, ventus, -i, *m.*

wing, āla, -ae, *f.* ; **wing of an army**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.* ; **winter quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.* ; **pass the winter**, hiemō, 1.

wish, volō, velle, volui ; **wish more or rather**, mālō, mälle, mālui. [*(with acc.)*].

with, cum (*with abl.*), apud. **withdraw** (*transitive*), dēdūcō -ere, -dūxī, -ductum ; (*intrans.*), discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum ; recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum

(<i>reflexive with</i> mē, tē, sē, etc.).	write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.	wrong, iniūria, -ae, f.
woman, mulier, -eris, f.; fēmina, -ae, f.	
wonder at, mīror, 1, dep.	Y.
woods, silva, -ae, f.	year, annus, -ī, m.
work, opus, operis, n.; labōrō, 1.	you, tū (<i>sing.</i>), vōs (<i>pl.</i>).
worthy, dignus, -a, -um.	your, vester, -tra, -trum, (<i>belong-</i>
wound, vulnus, -eris, n.; vulnerō, 1.	to more than one); tuus, -a, -um, (<i>belonging to one</i>).
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.	youth (young person), adulēs-cēns, -entis, m.; iuvenis, -is, m.

INDEX.

[References are to sections.]

- ablative**, of instrument or means, 70; of manner, 77; of accompaniment, 84; of time, 90; of agent, 102; of cause, 109; of specification, 116; of quality, 122; with comparatives for *quam*, 129; of degree of difference, 142; with *ut* or *fructus*, etc., 254; absolute, 363, 364, 365.
- accent**, 7.
- accompaniment**, abl. with *cum*, 84.
- accusative**, as direct object, 14; of duration and extent, 132; subject of infinitive, 231.
- adjectives**, agreement of, 39; declension, 37, 46, 98, 105, 112; (nine irregular), 167, 168.
- adverbs**, formation, 145; comparison, 146.
- agent**, abl. with *à* or *ab*, 102; ending *-tor*, 295; dative of, 390.
- agreement**, of verb, 23; of predicate noun, 26; of appositive, 28; of adjective, 39; of relative, 215; of participle, 249.
- alphabet**, 1.
- antecedent**, 214.
- appositive**, 27.
- Caesar**, words in, see preface; extracts from *Gallie War*, 402.
- cases**, 8, 1.
- causal clauses** with *cum*, 352.
- cause**, abl. of, 109.
- commands**, 329; in indirect discourse, 358.
- comparative**, with *quam* or abl., 128, 129.
- comparison**, of adjectives (regular), 126, 132; (irregular), 133, 138, 139, 140; of adverbs, 146.
- composition**, see formation.
- concessive clauses** with *cum*, 352.
- conditions**, simple, 335, 336; less vivid future, 338; contrary to fact, 340.
- conjugation**, 8, 2; first periphrastic, 336; second periphrastic, 338; paradigms of conjugation, 424-435.
- consecutive clauses**, 318.
- consonants**, 3; sounds of, 4.
- cum**, prep. with abl., 77, 84; enclitic, 192, 4.
- cum**, conjunction, temporal with indicative, 346; historical with subjunctive, 348; causal and concessive, 352.
- dative**, indirect object, 33; of possessor, 49; with adjectives, 155; with compound verbs, 268; with intransitives, 273; two datives, 288; with gerundive, 390.
- declension**, 8, 1; first, 10 to 19; second, 31, 36, 42; stem of, 31, 2, 8; 36, 1; third, 52, 55, 61, 73, 80, 87; fourth, 149; fifth, 163; of adjectives, 37, 46, 98, 105, 112; (nine irregular), 167, 168; of comparatives, 127; of numerals, 179, 180, 187; of pronouns (personal), 192, (reflexive) 192, (pos-

- sessive) 197, (demonstrative) 205, 208, (relative) 213, (interrogative) 220, (indefinite) 226; of participles, 248. Consolidated tables, 405-421.
- deponent verbs**, 252; certain deponents with ablative, 254.
- derivation**, see **formation**.
- difference**, degree of, 142.
- diphthongs**, 4.
- domus**, in expressions of place, 240.
- duration of time**, acc., 182.
- ē**, used before consonants, 65, note.
- enclitic**, 7, 4.
- eō**, 285, 427.
- extent of space**, acc., 182.
- ferō**, 276, 426.
- final clauses**, 311; see also 322, 323.
- fīō**, 285, 427.
- fore**, 387.
- formation**, of adverbs, 145; of compounds, 292; of nouns, 295, 297, 299; of adjectives, 300; of verbs, 301; of fut. inf. pass., 378, note, 387.
- fruor**, with ablative, 254.
- fungor**, with ablative, 254.
- gender**, 7; of first decl., 10, 8; of second decl., 31, 5; 36, 2; 42, 4; of third decl., 93; of fourth decl., 149, 4; of fifth decl., 163, 4.
- genitive**, limiting nouns, 17; partitive, 135.
- gerund**, 368, 371.
- gerundive**, 368, 371; in second periphrastic conjugation, 388.
- hic**, 205, 1, 4.
- ille**, 205, 8, 4.
- imperative constructions**, 328, 329.
- impersonal passive**, 273.
- indirect discourse**, 230, 231, 232, 234, 358, 359.
- indirect questions**, 306.
- infinitive**, in indirect discourse, 230, 232, 234; as subject or predicate noun, 260; to complete meaning of verbs, 262; formation of future passive, 378, note, 387.
- inflection**, 8. See **conjugation** and **declension**.
- instrument**, ablative of, 70.
- intensive** (*ipse*), 208, 2.
- is**, 208, 1.
- iste**, 205, 2.
- liquids**, 3.
- locative case**, 8, 1; 239.
- māiō**, 425.
- manner**, ablative, 77.
- means**, ablative, 70.
- mille**, declension and use, 180, 2.
- mutēs**, 3.
- nē**, in final clauses, 311; after verbs of fearing, 322; in imperative constructions, 329, 4; in wishes, 331.
- ne**, enclitic, 62.
- negative**, in final clauses, 311; in consecutive clauses, 318; after verbs of fearing, 322; in imperative clauses, 329; in wishes, 331.
- Nepos**, vocabulary, see *preface*.
- nōlī**, **nōlīte**, in negative commands, 329, 2.
- nōlō**, 425.
- nōnne**, 62.
- num**, 62.
- number**, 9.
- numerals**, cardinal, 178; declension of, 179, 180; ordinal, 187.
- object**, direct, 14; indirect, 33.
- obligation**, expressed by gerundive, 388, 390.
- ōrātiō obliqua**, see *indirect discourse*.
- participles**, 248, 249; of deponents, 252; declension of, 248; abl. absolute, 363, 364, 365; future expressing purpose, 381.
- partitive genitive**, 135.
- parts of speech**, 6.

passive, of intransitive verbs, 273.
periphrastic conjugations, 387, 388.

permission, 329.

place, how expressed, 239; with names of towns, 240; *domus* and *rūs*, 240.

plūs, defective, 139, note.

possum, 423.

potior, with abl., 254.

predicate noun, 25; infinitive as predicate noun, 260.

principal parts, 56, note.

pronouns, personal, 192; reflexive, 192, 208, 2; possessive, 197; demonstrative, 205, 208; relative, 213 (agreement of, 215; in final clauses, 311; in consecutive clauses, 318); interrogative, 220; indefinite, 226.

pronunciation, Roman, 4; English, 5.

purpose, clauses of, 311 (see also 322, 323); ways of expressing, 378, 379, 380, 381.

quality, ablative of, 122.

questions, 62; indirect, 306; in indirect discourse, 358.

qui and **quis** indefinite after *si*, etc., 226.

quin, 323.

relative, in final clauses, 311; in clauses of result, 318. See under **pronoun**.

requests, 329.

result, clauses of, 318.

rūs, in expressions of place, 240.

sequence of tenses, 304.

specification, abl. of, 116.

spirants, 3.

stem, 10, 8; of first decl., 10, 4; of second decl., 31, 2, 36, 1; of

third decl., 52, 1; of fourth decl., 149, 1; of fifth decl., 163; of present, 56, 1; of first conj., 56, 2; of second conj., 150, 2; of perfect, 74, 1.

subject, of finite verb, 13; of infinitive, 231; infinitive as subject, 260.

subjunctive, sequence of tenses of, 304, 359; in indirect questions, 306; in final clauses, 311; in clauses of result, 318; after verbs of fearing, 322; with *quin*, 323; in less vivid future conditions, 338; in conditions contrary to fact, 340; with *cum*, 348, 352; in indirect discourse, 358, 359.

subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 358.

sum, conjugation, 422.

supine, in *-um*, 378; in *-a*, 383.

syllables, 4; quantity of, 6.

tenses, 8, 2; of infinitive in indirect discourse, 234; of participles, 249; sequence of, in subjunctive, 304; in indirect discourse, 359.

termination, 10, 5, 403.

time, when, abl., 90; duration, acc., 182.

ut, in final clauses, 311; in clauses of result, 318; after verbs of fearing, 322.

utinam, 330.

ūtor, with abl., 254.

vescor, with abl., 254.

vocabulary, composition of, see preface.

volū, 425.

vowels, 2; pronunciation of, 4; quantity of, 5.

wishes, 331.

THE STUDENTS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

ERNEST MONDELL PEASE, A.M.,

Leland Stanford Junior University,

AND

HARRY THURSTON PECK, PH.D., L.H.D.,

Columbia University.

This Series contains the Latin authors usually read in American schools and colleges, and also others well adapted to class-room use, but not heretofore published in suitable editions. The several volumes are prepared by special editors, who aim to revise the text carefully and to edit it in the most serviceable manner. Where there are German editions of unusual merit, representing years of special study under the most favorable circumstances, these are used, with the consent of the foreign editor, as a basis for the American edition. In this way it is possible to bring out text-books of the highest excellence in a comparatively short period of time.

The editions are of two kinds, conforming to the different methods of studying Latin in our best institutions. Some contain in the introductions and commentary such a careful and minute treatment of the author's life, language, and style as to afford the means for a thorough appreciation of the author and his place in Latin literature. Others aim merely to assist the student to a good reading knowledge of the author, and have only the text and brief explanatory notes at the bottom of each page. The latter are particularly acceptable for sight reading, and for rapid reading after the minute study of an author or period in one of the fuller editions. For instance, after a class has read a play or two of Plautus and Terence carefully, with special reference to the peculiarities of style, language, metres, the methods of presenting a play, and the like, these editions will be admirably suited for the rapid reading of other plays.

The Series also contains various supplementary works prepared by competent scholars. Every effort is made to give the books a neat and attractive appearance.

The following volumes for College use are now ready or in preparation:—

ATLAS OF THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF THE ANCIENT WORLD. Edited by JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College.

CATULLUS, Selections, based upon the edition of Riese. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph.D., Professor in Boston University.

CICERO, De Senectute et de Amicitia. By CHARLES E. BENNETT, A.M., Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*

CICERO, Tusculan Disputations, Books I and II. By Professor PECK.

CICERO, De Oratore, Book I, based upon the edition of Sorof. By W. B. OWEN, Ph.D., Professor in Lafayette College. *Ready.*

CICERO, Select Letters, based in part upon the edition of Süpfle-Böckel. By Professor PEASE.

GELLIUS, Selections. By Professor PECK.

GREEK AND ROMAN MYTHOLOGY. By KARL P. HARRINGTON, A.M., University of Maine, and HERBERT C. TOLMAN, Ph.D., Vanderbilt University.

HAND-BOOK OF LATIN SYNONYMS. By Mr. MILLER.

HORACE, Odes and Epodes. By PAUL SHOREY, Ph.D., Professor in the Chicago University. *Ready.*

HORACE, Satires and Epistles, based upon the edition of Kiessling. By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*

JUVENAL, Satires. By JAMES C. EGBERT, Jr., Ph.D., Professor of Latin, and NELSON G. MCCREA, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin, Columbia University.

LATIN COMPOSITION, for College Use. By WALTER MILLER, A.M., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University. *Ready.*

LATIN COMPOSITION, for Advanced Classes. By H. R. FAIRCLOUGH, Ph.D., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University.

LIVY, Books XXI and XXII, based upon the edition of Wölflin. By JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*

LIVY, Book I, for rapid reading. By Professor LORD. *Ready.*

MARTIAL, Selections. By CHARLES KNAPP, Ph.D., Professor in Barnard College.

NEPOS, for rapid reading. By ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D., Associate Professor in the University of California. *Ready.*

PETRONIUS, Cena Trimalchionis, based upon the edition of Bücheler. By W. E. WATERS, Ph.D., the University of New York. *Ready.*

PLAUTUS, Captivi, for rapid reading. By GROVE E. BARBER, A.M., Professor in the University of Nebraska. *Ready.*

PLAUTUS, Menaechmi, based upon the edition of Brix. By HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*

PLAUTUS, Trinummus, for rapid reading. By H. C. NUTTING, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin in the University of California.

PLINY, Select Letters, for rapid reading. By SAMUEL BALL PLATTNER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*

QUINTILIAN, Book X, based upon the edition of Krüger. By EMORY B. LEASE, Ph.D., Instructor in the College of the City of New York.

SALLUST, Catiline, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By CHARLES G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the City of New York. *Ready.*

SENECA, Select Letters. By E. C. WINSLOW, A.M.

SPECIMENS OF LATIN LITERATURE.

Classical Prose. By JOHN FRANCIS GREENE, A.M., Professor in Brown University.

Classical Poetry.

Early Latin. By HENRY F. LINSKOTT, Ph.D., Professor in the University of North Carolina.

Latin Hymns. By WILLIAM A. MERRILL, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California.

Silver Prose. By ARTHUR L. WHEELER, Ph.D., Professor in Bryn Mawr College.

Silver Poetry. By WALTER A. DENNISON, Ph.D., Professor in Oberlin College.

TACITUS, Annals, Book I and Selections from Book II, based upon the edition of Nipperdey-Andresen.

TACITUS, Agricola and Germania, based upon the editions of Schweizer-Sidler and Dräger. By A. G. HOPKINS, Ph.D., Late Professor in Hamilton College. *Ready.*

TACITUS, Histories, Book I and Selections from Books II-V, based upon the edition of Wolff. By EDWARD H. SPIEKER, Ph.D., Professor in the Johns Hopkins University.

TERENCE, Adelphoe, for rapid reading. By WILLIAM L. COWLES, A.M., Professor in Amherst College. *Ready.*

TERENCE, Phormio, based upon the edition of Dziatzko. By HERBERT C. ELMER, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*

THE PRIVATE LIFE OF THE ROMANS, a manual for the use of schools and colleges. By HARRIET WATERS PRESTON and LOUISE DODGE. *Ready.*

TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS, Selections, based upon the edition of Jacoby. By HENRY F. BURTON, A.M., Professor in the University of Rochester.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS, Fifty Selections, for rapid reading. By CHARLES S. SMITH, A.M., late College of New Jersey. *Ready.*

VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, Historia Romana, Book II. By F. E. ROCKWOOD, A.M., Professor in Bucknell University. *Ready.*

Books for the Secondary School:—

- A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN.** By **HIRAM TUELL, A.M.**, late Principal of the Milton High School, Mass., and **HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D.**, Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- A BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN.** By **TUELL** and **FOWLER. *Ready.***
- A NEW LATIN COMPOSITION, for Schools.** By **M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.**, formerly Principal of Chauncy Hall School, Boston. *Ready.*
- A NEW GRADATIM.** By **M. C. SMART, A.M.**, Principal of Claremont (N.H.) High School. *Ready.*
- ATLAS OF THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF THE ANCIENT WORLD.** Edited by **JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D.**, Professor in Dartmouth College.
- CAESAR, Gallic War, Books I-V.** By **HAROLD W. JOHNSON, Ph.D.**, Professor in the Indiana University, and **FREDERICK W. SANFORD, A.M.**, Professor in Illinois College.
- CICERO, Pro Ligario.** By **CLARENCE H. WHITE**, Latin Master, Worcester (Mass.) Academy. *Ready.*
- CICERO, Select Orations.** By **BENJ. L. D'Ooge, Ph.D.**, Professor in the Michigan State Normal College. *Ready.*
- EUTROPIUS, Selections.** By **VICTOR S. CLARK, Lit.D. *Ready.***
- GRADED LATIN FOR THE SECOND YEAR.** By **LEON J. RICHARDSON, A.B.**, Assistant Professor in the University of California, **H. RUSHTON FAIRCLOUGH, Ph.D.**, Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University, and **BENJAMIN O. FOSTER, Ph.D.**, Instructor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University.
- NEPOS, Selections.** By **J. C. JONES, A.M.**, Professor in the University of Missouri.
- OVID, Selections from the Metamorphoses**, based upon the edition of Meuser-Egen. By **B. L. WIGGINS, A.M.**, Professor in the University of the South.
- OVID, Selections, for rapid reading.** By **A. L. BONDURANT, A.M.**, Professor in the University of Mississippi.
- SALLUST, Catiline**, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By **CHARLES G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D.**, Professor in the College of the City of New York. *Ready.*
- VERGIL, Books I-VI.** By **JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D.**, Chancellor of Vanderbilt University, and **WILLIAM H. KIRK, Ph.D.**, Professor in Rutgers College.
- VERGIL, The Story of Turnus from Aen. VII-XII**, for rapid reading. By **MOSES SLAUGHTER, Ph.D.**, Professor in the University of Wisconsin. *Ready.*
- VIRI ROMAE, Selections.** With Prose Exercises. By **G. M. WHICHER, A.M.**, Teachers' Normal College, New York City. *Ready.*

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO., Publishers,
Boston, Chicago, London.

FOURTEEN DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

4 Jan '56 GB	REC'D LD
DEC 11 1955 LU	SEP 9 1959
<i>[Handwritten: 16 Jan 56 WZ]</i>	
<i>[Handwritten: Apr 4, '56]</i>	5 Jan '60 PM
APR 8 - 1956 LD	IN STACKS
	DEC 9 1959
	8 Oct '62 11
16 Jan '59 RS	REC'D LD
	SEP 27 1962
	MAY 4 - 1966 9 1
REC'D LD	JUN 2 '66 2 4 RCO
JUL 16 1959	NOV 23 1966 3 2
30 Jan '59 PW	RECEIVED
	DEC 20 '66 -12 AM

LD 21-100m-2, '55
(B189s22) 476

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 38071

AL LD

1944

1947

M246875

PH 3000
11
1904

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

